

**PRO PATRIA**  
**A LATIN STORY FOR BEGINNERS**

---

**PROF. E.A. SONNENSCHEIN, D.LITT.**

# Cornell University Library

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME  
FROM THE  
SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND  
THE GIFT OF

**Henry W. Sage**

1891

A.26.7.311

23/X/12

5931

Cornell University Library  
arV11210

Pro patria:



3 1924 031 167 160

- 77 -



Cornell University  
Library

The original of this book is in  
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in  
the United States on the use of the text.





MONUMENTVM·IN·MEMORIAM  
FREDERICI·HVGONIŚ  
SHERSTON·ROBERTS·  
AD·TVGELAM·FACTVM·

PRO PATRIA: A LATIN STORY  
FOR BEGINNERS, BEING A  
SEQUEL TO 'ORA MARITIMA,'  
WITH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES  
BY E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, D.LITT.,  
OXON., PROFESSOR IN THE UNI-  
VERSITY OF BIRMINGHAM

*Qui procul hinc, the legend's writ,  
The frontier grave is far away,  
Qui ante diem perit;  
Sed miles, sed pro patria.*

HENRY NEWBOLT;  
'Clifton Chapel.'

LONDON  
SWAN SONNENSCHEIN & CO., LTD  
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN CO.

1910

A

FIRST ISSUE, 1903 ; REPRINTED 1907  
REPRINTED 1910.

## Preface

THE idea on which my *Ora Maritima* and its sequel, the present volume, are based, is that an interesting narrative may be a better vehicle for teaching the elements of a language than a collection of isolated grammar sentences, provided that the interesting narrative is so constructed and graduated as to constitute in itself a basis for the systematic study of grammar. My object, then, has been to write a book which should not only appeal to the minds of pupils through the interest of its subject matter, but also form as complete a grammatical ladder as the driest of dry exercise books. *Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci.*

In carrying out this programme for *Pro Patria* I have adhered to the ideal which I set up for myself in *Ora Maritima*, that the Latin text should be 'classical in form, but modern in setting.' The scene is laid in a country house on the coast of Kent, and afterwards at Winchester, and the time of the action is the period from September 1899 to June 1900. I have thus been enabled to give unity of action to the two parts into which the narrative falls. The first part is taken up with a study of Roman Britain in connexion with a visit to Richborough Castle ; the second with the Boer War, the first news of which arrives soon after the conclusion of the summer holidays. It is my hope that my young readers may find in the first part a more vivid picture of the condition of Britain under the Romans than is contained in most school histories of England ; and in the treatment of the Boer War I have endeavoured to bring out its dramatic interest and heroic incidents. Party politics are, of course, kept out of view.

The amount of grammar covered by *Pro Patria*<sup>1</sup> may seem to some teachers disproportionately small; and, no doubt, if it had been my object simply to teach grammar, I might have made the text shorter. But a long experience in teaching Latin to pupils of very various ages and stages has made me sceptical as to the value of a skin-deep knowledge of grammar. It is one thing to learn declensions and conjugations out of a grammar or from grammar sentences, and quite another thing to know them as they appear in actual life. How many boys and girls leave school without having acquired any real mastery even of the simplest kind of Latin or the power of making any practical use of the grammatical facts which they have so laboriously learned! That is the sort of educational result on which the present outcry against Latin in schools is largely based. The great mistake seems to be that the elementary stages of learning are turned into a purely grammatical discipline and that the grammar is hurried over before the study of the language proper and the literature are commenced. Declensions and conjugations learned in this fashion find no real lodgment in the mind; or, at best, the outcome of the tedious process is that the pupil 'holds the parts in his hand,' but misses 'the spirit that binds them together.'<sup>2</sup> It is against this abstract method of teaching that *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* are a protest. It has been my object to write for the use of the beginner a 'real book,' which shall have a literary as well as a linguistic interest of its own, and from which the pupil shall gain something more than a bowing acquaintance with Nouns and Verbs. I have, therefore, not shunned repetitions; and I have deliberately aimed at providing a certain

---

<sup>1</sup> The point from which *Pro Patria* starts is that which is reached in *Ora Maritima*, and the pupil is carried on to the end of the regular accidence.

<sup>2</sup> *Dann hat er die Teile in seiner Hand;  
Fehlt, leider! nur das geistige Band.*

—GOETHE, *Faust.*

mass of easy Latin from which he may acquire the habit of reading, as distinct from construing, Latin. If, at the end of two<sup>1</sup> years' work, the pupil has acquired this, together with the fundamentals of Latin grammar, he will have spent his time to some purpose, and will be in a position to begin the study of a classical author and of the more difficult parts of the grammar with some hope of a happy issue. Or if, on the other hand, he drops the study of Latin at this point, he will still have acquired a working knowledge of the language up to a certain level. This is an aspect of the matter on which I desire to lay some stress. There are many schools, or modern sides of schools, in which only a limited amount of time can be devoted to Latin ; and the problem is how can that time be spent so as to produce the most profitable result. It is my hope that the present book may contribute to the solution of this problem.

It is not my intention that an equal amount of time and attention should be bestowed on all the sections of the text. Some of them (marked with a †) are unnecessary from the purely grammatical point of view ; they exist for the purpose of carrying on the story and providing material for rapid reading ; and where time presses they may be translated by the teacher to the class. The exercises and conversations are intended to be used as the needs of particular classes may demand. For translation into Latin alternative passages are given, from which the teacher may select what best suits his purpose. Some of them may be worked on paper, some *viva voce*, some may be omitted altogether. I have thought it better to give too much rather than too little.

One of my young friends who was learning from this book made a criticism of it which will probably pass through the minds of other readers. "The Romans," he said, "knew nothing of South Africa." Exactly ; but it is possible that the best

---

<sup>1</sup> It is intended that *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* shall occupy one year each.

way to learn an ancient language is to study it as written at the present day in connexion with a subject matter which is familiar or easily intelligible to the modern reader. This is, of course, only a means to an end ; but there are many ends which are better attained indirectly than directly.

I have ventured on some novelties in the realm of grammar teaching, among which the use of the term 'Injunctive,' side by side with 'Subjunctive,' calls for a word of explanation. The new term expresses the fundamental idea of what is commonly called the 'Subjunctive Mood' ; it is the mood of *desire*, and should be introduced to the pupil in the first instance in connexion with sentences like 'God save the King.'<sup>1</sup> For such meanings the term Subjunctive is quite inappropriate, and a fruitful source of error ; it comes in, however, so soon as the mood appears in a subordinate clause. And if the pupil subsequently abandons the term *Injunctive* altogether, it will nevertheless have served its purpose in introducing him to a right conception of the mood—a conception which will serve him in good stead afterwards.

My best thanks are due to Dr. J. E. Sandys, Public Orator in the University of Cambridge, for permission to quote some verses which originally appeared in his Latin speeches to the University,<sup>2</sup> and for his great kindness in reading my proof sheets of the text and making many valuable suggestions.

E. A. S.

THE UNIVERSITY, BIRMINGHAM,  
July, 1903.

*Note to the New Issue.*—No changes have been made in the present issue, with the exception of the correction of a few misprints and the addition of a Summary of Grammatical Rules (pp. 182 ff.)

<sup>1</sup> See Preparations, §§ 48, 49, 50.

<sup>2</sup> These are acknowledged in their places in the "Preparations."

# Contents

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| <b>I. MENSIS SEPTEMBER.</b>  |      |
| § 1. Adjectives of 3rd Declension in —, <i>is</i> , <i>e</i> . . . . .                             | 3    |
| <b>II. BRITANNIA LIBERATA.</b>   |      |
| § 2. <i>is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i> —Singular Number . . . . .                                  | 4    |
| <b>III. CUNOBELINUS.</b>   |      |
| §§ 3, 4. <i>ei</i> , <i>eae</i> , <i>ea</i> —Plural Number . . . . .                               | 5    |
| <b>IV. CARACTACUS.</b>   |      |
| § 5. <i>eius</i> and <i>suus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> contrasted . . . . .                       | 7    |
| § 6. <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i> . . . . .  | 9    |
| <b>V. BOADICEA.</b>  |      |
| §§ 7–9. <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i> . . . . .   | 9    |
| <b>VI. BRITANNIA PACATA.</b>   |      |
| §§ 10–13. <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i> . . . . .  | 12   |
| <b>VII. PAX ROMANA.</b>  |      |
| § 14. Comparatives of Adjectives . . . . .   | 15   |
| § 15. Superlatives of Adjectives . . . . .   | 15   |
| §§ 16, 17. Passive Voice of 1st Conjugation; Present, Past Imperfect and Future tenses . . . . .   | 17   |
| <b>VIII. CASTELLUM RUTUPINUM.</b>  |      |
| § 18. Questions and Exclamations . . . . .   | 20   |
| § 19. <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> and <i>quis</i> , <i>quid</i> —in questions . . . . . | 20   |
| §§ 20, 21. <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> in clauses which are not questions . . . . .     | 21   |
| § 22. 2nd Conjugation: Present, Past Imperf. and Future, Active . . . . .                          | 24   |
| § 23. 4th Declension and Passives of 2nd Conjugation . . . . .                                     | 24   |
| <b>IX. ANGLI ET SAXONES.</b>   |      |
| §§ 24–26. 2nd Conjugation; Perfect Stem, Active . . . . .  | 26   |
| § 27. Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive—how expressed . . . . .                       | 28   |
| §§ 28–30. 5th Declension . . . . .   | 29   |
| <b>X. RES AFRICANAE.</b>   |      |
| § 31. Recapitulation of Verbs . . . . .  | 31   |
| § 32. 3rd Conjugation; Present, Active and Passive . . . . .                                       | 33   |

## CONTENTS

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| <b>XI. ORIGO REIPUBLICAE AFRICANAЕ.</b>  |      |
| §§ 33-35. 3rd Conjugation; Past Imperfect, Active and Passive, together with Imperative Active . . . . .                 | 33   |
| <b>XII. INITIUM BELLI.</b>   |      |
| § 36. 3rd Conjugation; Future, Active and Passive . . . . .  | 36   |
| § 37. 3rd Conj.; Perfect Stems Active formed with <i>s</i> . . . . .   | 37   |
| § 38. 3rd Conj.; Perfect Stems Active formed without any suffix . . . . .  | 37   |
| § 39. 3rd Conj.; Perfect, Pluperfect and Fut. Perf. Passive . . . . .  | 38   |
| <b>XIII. MILITES REGINAE.</b>  |      |
| § 40. 4th Conj.; Present, Active and Passive . . . . .   | 39   |
| § 41. 4th Conj.; Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive . . . . .   | 40   |
| § 42. 4th Conj.; Perfect Stem Active . . . . .   | 40   |
| <b>XIV. TRIA OPPIDA OBSESSA.</b>   |      |
| § 43. Verbs in <i>io</i> with Infinitive in <i>ere</i> —Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive . . . . . | 41   |
| <b>XV. VICTORIAE ET CLADES BRITANNICAE.</b>  |      |
| §§ 44-47. Same verbs continued, with Perfect Stems Active . . . . .  | 42   |
| <b>XVI. FOEDUS NOMINIS BRITANNICI.</b>   |      |
| § 48. Present Injunctive of <i>sum</i> . . . . .   | 46   |
| § 49. Present Injunctive of 1st Conjugation. . . . .   | 46   |
| <b>XVII. POST TENEBRAS LUX.</b>  |      |
| § 50. Present Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> and 1st Conj. . . . .  | 47   |
| <b>XVIII. ADAMANTOPOLIS OBSIDIONE LIBERATA.</b>  |      |
| § 51. Pres. Subj. of <i>sum</i> and 1st Conj.—continued . . . . .  | 49   |
| § 52. Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the other Conjugations . . . . .   | 50   |
| <b>XIX. DIES MAIUBENSIS.</b>   |      |
| § 53. Past Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> . . . . .   | 50   |
| §§ 54. 55. Past Imperfect Subj. of the four Conjugations . . . . .   | 52   |
| <b>XX. PAX BRITANNICA.</b>   |      |
| § 56. RECAPITULATION . . . . .   | 53   |
| <b>PREPARATIONS</b> . . . . .  | 57   |
| <b>EXERCISES AND CONVERSATIONS</b> . . . . .   | 109  |
| <b>GOD SAVE THE KING IN LATIN</b> (Arranged for Singing) . . . . .   | 148  |
| <b>LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY</b> . . . . .  | 149  |
| <b>ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY</b> . . . . .  | 176  |
| <b>SUMMARY OF GRAMMATICAL RULES</b> . . . . .  | 182  |

PRO PATRIA



Antonius fecit

COMMENTARII DE VITA MEA AD DUBRAS  
ANNO MDCCCXCIX.

I. Mensis September.

[Adjectives of Third Declension in —, *is*, *e*.]

1. Kalendae sunt hodie Septembres. Primus 1  
mensis feriarum elapsus est, et scholae instant. Nam  
ante finem mensis Septembris apud magistrum 2  
meum ero. Et per ultimam partem feriarum necesse  
est libris duas horas cotidie dare. Sic imperat patruus  
meus. Mane igitur plerumque lectito. Patruus 3  
autem mihi librum Taciti de vita Agricolae, ducis  
celebris Romanorum, dedit. Multa insunt de Bri-  
tannia nostra antiqua. Vita Agricolae multum me 4  
delectat. Nonnullis tamen in locis difficilis est et  
obscura. Sed animo alaci lectito, quia patruus meus 5  
difficilia et obscura explicat, et tabulis pictis  
aedificiorum, armorum, nummorum, viarum illustrat.  
Ubi aliquid in Vita Agricolae deest, ibi patruus 6  
meus capita ex Annalibus Taciti vel ex Historia  
Anglica recitat. Amici mei, Marcus et Alexander,  
interdum adsunt dum recitat. Nam saepe nos 7  
visitant. Post prandium plerumque ambulamus,  
vel ludo trigonali operam damus, vel in mari  
natamus.

## II. Britannia Liberata.

[*is, ea, id.*—Singular Number.]

<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> Gaius Iulius Caesar, postquam copias suas pedestres et equestres ex Britannia in Galliam transportavit, nihil amplius de Britannis cogitavit. Ab incolis litoris meridiani victoriam reportaverat, ad flumen Tamesam penetraverat, oppidum Cassivellauni expugnaverat, magnum numerum captivorum in servitutem venumdederat, tributum <sup>8</sup> Britannis imperaverat. Id ei satis erat. Sed <sup>9</sup> Britanniam non revera debellaverat, nec Victoria <sup>10</sup> eius magna fuerat. Tacitus eum non magnam victoriam reportavisse in capite tertio decimo Vitae Agricolae affirmat. “Divus Iulius” inquit “Britanniam Romanis monstravit, sed non debellavit.” <sup>14</sup> Britanni autem viri animo forti erant. Tributum et servitutem non tolerabant. Et Romanis post



<sup>18</sup> tempora C. Iulii Caesaris longa oblivio erat Britanniae. Nam per multos annos bellum domesticum civitatem Romanam vexavit. Post finem <sup>19</sup> eius belli Romani Augustum principem creaverunt. <sup>20</sup> Ei Britannia non curae erat. Nec principes secundus et tertius, Tiberius et Caligula, insulam nostram <sup>22</sup> intraverunt; quamquam Caligula de ea intranda cogitavit.

## III. Cunobelinus.

[*ei, eae, ea*—Plural Number.]

3. Itaque per centum fere annos reges Britannici vel reginae Britannicae in Britannia regnaverunt, nec Romani Britannos bello vexaverunt. In numero eorum regum erat Cunobelinus. Is <sup>4</sup> revera “Britannorum rex” erat : sic eum Suetonius, scriptor Romanus, nominat. Nam quāquam non omnes gentes Britannicae ei subiectae erant, tamen <sup>5</sup> magnam partem gentium Britanniae mediterraneae et meridianaē in unum regnum consociaverat. Caput earum gentium Camulodunum erat. Exstant <sup>10</sup> hodie nummi Cunobeli ; in eis nomen regis vel <sup>11</sup> litteras nonnullas eius nominis lectitare possumus : <sup>12</sup>



exstant quoque nummi patris eius Tasciovani et <sup>13</sup> fratri eius Epaticci. Cunobelinus multos annos regnavit ; eo fere tempore rex Britannorum erat <sup>15</sup> cum Tiberius et Caligula principes Romanorum erant. Ei ab anno quarto decimo ad annum primum <sup>17</sup> et quadragesimum post Christum natum imperio Romano praerant. Iesus Christus natus erat <sup>19</sup> dum Augustus princeps erat : morti datus erat <sup>20</sup> dum Tiberius imperitabat, ut Tacitus in capite quarto et quadragesimo libri quinti decimi Annalium commemorat. Inter filios Cunobeli erant Carac- <sup>22</sup> tacus et Togodumnus.

†4. Is rex magnus et bonus erat, atque defensor  
 acer libertatis Britannicae. Sed Romani tantum  
 regem tolerare non poterant. Itaque de nova  
 expeditione contra Britanniam cogitabant. Poetae  
 5 Romani eius aetatis insulam nostram et incolas  
 6 eius saepe commemorant. Horatius eos "feros"  
 et "remotos" et "intactos" (id est "non debel-  
 latos" vel "liberos") nominat : Vergilius eos "toto  
 orbe terrarum divisos" (id est "separatos") vocat.  
 Mare eos ab aliis partibus orbis terrarum separabat ;  
 11 et libertas eis cara erat. Pro aris et focis suis  
 contra Romanos magna virtute pugnaverant, atque  
 hostibus Romanorum in bello Gallico auxilia  
 14 subministraverant. Itaque Romani libertatem  
 eorum non tolerabant.



NUMMUS AUGUSTI  
 (CAPUT AUGUSTI)      (FIGURA SPHINGIS)

## IV. Caractacus.\*

[*eius and suus, a, um contrasted.*]

† 5. Post mortem Cunobelini, Claudius, quartus princeps Romanorum, expeditionem contra Britannos paravit. Consilium eius erat totam Britanniam debellare et cum imperio Romano consociare. Itaque anno tertio et quadragesimo uni ex ducibus suis, Aulo Plautio, magnum numerum copiarum pedestrum et equestrium mandavit. Eae meridianam partem insulae nostrae facile occupaverunt. Oppidum Camulodunum expugnaverunt, ubi Romani post paucos annos coloniam veteranorum collocaverunt. Ea prima urbs Romana in Britannia fuit. Propter victoriam a Britannis reportatam princeps Romanus filio suo nomen Britannico dedit. Filius eius priore anno natus erat. Sed Britanni nondum debellati erant. In silvas montesque Cambriae se occultaverunt, ubi duae gentes bellicosae, Ordovices et Silures, per septem annos contra Romanos fortiter bellaverunt. Copiis Britannicis Caractacus, filius Cunobelini, praeerat. Nomen eius per totam Britanniam celebre erat. Non facile erat eas gentes Cambriae debellare. Reliquiae castrorum Romanorum Viroconii, Devae, Iscae hodie exstant. Sed legiones Romanae tandem victrices fuerunt, et Silures Ordovicesque magno proelio superaverunt. Deinde ducem eorum audacem et insignem Romam captivum deportaverunt.

---

\* Tacitus ducem Silurum *Caratacum* (non *Caractacum*) vocat.



HAROLD PERCIVAL.03

PORTA OCCIDENTALIS ·  
COLONIAE · CAMVLODVNI

[*ipse, ipsa, ipsum.*]

6. Nomen Caractaci iam per totam Italiam celebre erat; nam victoriam Romanorum per novem annos retardaverat. Et omnes homines cupidi erant regem Britannorum ipsum spectandi. Itaque Claudius populum ad grande spectaculum convocavit. Magna multitudo captivorum Britannicorum una cum Caractaco ipso et uxore fratribusque eius in catenis aderant. Tum ceteri captivi veniam principis imploraverunt. Sed Caractacus ipse animum audacem et vere Britannicum praestitit. Ante oculos principis ipsius collocatus “Rex sum” inquit “et a regibus claris oriundus: fuerunt mihi viri, equi, arma. Non mirum est si contra vos Romanos pro libertate pugnavi. Vos toti orbi terrarum imperitandi cupidi estis; sed nobis Britannis non mos est servitutem tolerare. Mortem non formido.” Tum princeps propter admirationem tantae audaciae veniam libertatemque Caractaco ipsi et uxori fratribusque eius dedit. Sic Tacitus in capite septimo et tricesimo libri duodecimi Annalium narrat.

### V. Boadicea.\*

[*ille, illa, illud.*]

7. Anno post Christum natum primo et sexagesimo Britanni rebellaverunt. Suetonius Paulinus, unus ex ducibus Neronis, quinti principis Romanorum, Britanniae tum praeerat. Ille in Monam insulam penetravit, ubi magnum numerum Druid-

---

\* Tacitus reginam Icenorum *Boudiccam* (non *Boadiceam*) vocat.

arum trucidavit, et fana eorum vastavit. Sed dum  
 7 ille in Cambria abest, Iceni cum Cassis et Trinoban-  
 tibus aliisque gentibus Britannicis se contra Romanos  
 consociant. Non mirum est si Britanni coloniam  
 10 illam Camulodunum, ubi veterani illi Romani  
 collocati erant, non amabant. Nam veterani eos  
 omnibus iniuriis vexabant. Uxores liberosque  
 eorum in servitutem deportabant. Viros ipsos  
 ignavos et servos vocabant. Oppidum iam viis et  
 15 aedificiis Romanis ornaverant, sed muris non firma-  
 verant. Inter illa aedificia templum "Divi Cladii"  
 erat; nam principem mortuum Romani pro deo  
 18 adorabant. Et in illo templo simulacrum Victoriae  
 collocatum erat.

1 8. Itaque Boadicea, regina illa audax Iceno-  
 rum, inter ordines Britannicos in essedo suo equitans,  
 Britannos suos ad rebellionem incitavit. "Auscul-  
 tate" inquit "Iceni et Cassi; auscultate Coritani,  
 5 Trinobantes! Di nostri nobis victoriam, illis cladem  
 mortemque parant! Ecce, colonia Camulodunum  
 defensoribus nudata est! Copiae Romanae in  
 finibus Ordovicum longe absunt, ubi fana Druidarum  
 vastant. Coloniam illam, ubi pauci tantum veterani  
 cum uxoribus liberisque suis habitant, facile erit  
 11 expugnare. Illos nulla patria ad virtutem incitat;  
 nos patria et penates, nos libertas ad arma vocat.  
 Atque di ipsi nobis omen victoriae et imperii ded-  
 14 erunt. Nam simulacrum illud Victoriae praecipa-  
 verunt. Et Druidae alia portenta nuntiant. Terrae  
 adhuc ignotae Britannis aliquando subiectae erunt.  
 17 Ubi Caesares numquam steterunt, ibi filii nostri  
 vel filii filiorum imperitabunt. Vos coloniam illam

crudelem expugnate ! Templum dei illius falsi <sup>19</sup>  
 cremate ! Viros, feminas, liberos trucidate ! Illud <sup>20</sup>  
 est consilium feminae. Num vos viri minus fortes <sup>21</sup>  
 eritis ? ”



†9. Britanni ad arma volant. Coloniam Camulodunum expugnant ; templum illud Claudi, ubi veterani se occultaverant, cremant. Interea Suetonius ex insula Mona cum decem milibus virorum ad Tamesam properavit. Nam Londinium, quamquam nondum colonia Romana erat, tamen iam tum copia mercatorum et navigiorum celebre erat. Sic Tacitus in capite tertio et tricesimo libri quarti decimi Annalium affirmat. Sed urbem ex clade servare non poterat. Britanni Londinium

et Verulamium oppugnant; septuaginta milia  
<sup>12</sup> Romanorum trucidant, ingentem praedam captant.  
<sup>13</sup> Suetonius suos prope silvam collocaverat, et se ad  
 proelium parabat. Britanni Romanos numero  
 virorum multum superabant, et exspectatione  
<sup>16</sup> victoriae triumphabant. Sed pauci illi Romani  
 magnam victoriam reportaverunt; Britanni contra  
 legiones Romanas stare non poterant, quia Romani  
 eos pondere armorum et scientia belli multum super-  
 abant. In illo proelio Romani octoginta milia  
 virorum et feminarum trucidaverunt; nam Britanni  
<sup>22</sup> feminas suas in vehiculis apportaverant, proelii  
<sup>23</sup> spectandi causa. Boadicea ipsa se morti dedit.

## VI. Britannia pacata.

[*hic, haec, hoc.*]

<sup>1</sup> 10. Hic fuit finis rebellionis Boadiceae. Sed  
 Romani nondum totam insulam pacaverant. Nam  
 Britannia provincia turbulenta erat, ut Tacitus  
 affirmat; et Britanni occidentales et septentrionales  
 victoriam Romanorum adhuc retardabant. Totam  
<sup>6</sup> insulam pacare consilium erat Vespasiani, noni  
 principis Romanorum. Itaque anno duodecimo  
 gesimo post Christum natum Iulio Agricolae sum-  
 mum imperium legionum Britannicarum mandavit.  
<sup>10</sup> Huius viri clari vitam Tacitus narravit. Uxor  
<sup>11</sup> Taciti filia Agricolae erat. Hunc virum Tacitus  
 magnopere amabat, et memoriam eius monumento  
 pulchro consecravit: monumentum est liber ille  
 de vita eius. Vir iustus, humanus, clemens erat,  
 si testimonium Taciti verum est.

11. Primo anno imperii sui Agricola in Cambria bellavit, ubi magnam victoriam ab Ordovicibus reportavit. Hanc gentem fere totam trucidavit, si Tacitus vera affirmat. Tum insulam Monam occupavit. Naves ei deerant; sed sub signis Romanis nonnullae cohortes Batavorum militabant. Hi periti erant natandi, et trans fretum nataverunt. Tertio anno Agricola contra Brigantes aliasque gentes septentrionales Britanniae bellavit. Sexto anno classem comparavit. Dum haec oram maritimam Caledoniae explorat, ipse cum copiis pedestribus et equestribus per Devam et Luguvallium in Caledoniam usque ad Clotam et Bodotriam penetrat. Totam regionem castellis firmat. Sed Caledonii trans Clotam et Bodotriam, velut in alteram insulam, se congregant. Proximo anno Romani in partes interiores Caledoniae penetrant. Ibi, prope Montem Graupium, dux Caledonius, Galgacus vel Calgacus nomine, suos ad proelium his verbis incitat.

12. "Haec pugna, ut spero, causa libertatis perpetuae toti Britanniae erit. Nobis Caledonibus servitus adhuc ignota est: Hi montes, hae silvae, haec maria nobis libertatem dederunt. Sed nunc in hunc angulum remotum Britanniae Romani penetraverunt. Adsunt, velut lupi saevi; nec Oriens nec Occidens eos satiavit. Ne mare quidem nostrum a periculo classis Romanae tutum est. Terra marique hanc insulam oppugnant. Itaque nullam veniam exspectate, si illi in hoc proelio victoriam reportaverint. Vos ipsos et uxores liberosque vestros trucidabunt vel in servitutem

12 deportabunt; et cum totam terram vastaverint,  
solitudinem pacem vocabunt. Sed nondum 'pacata'  
18 est haec Caledonia. Iceni et Trinobantes Coloniam  
Romanam expugnaverunt et cremaverunt. Femina  
facinoris illius paeclari dux erat. Num vos, viri  
Caledonii, minus fortes eritis? Hodie pacem  
illam Romanam a vobis ipsis et uxoribus liberisque  
vestris propulsate. Patria ipsa vos ad pugnam et  
victoriam vocat!"

1 † 13. Interea Agricola quoque suos in hunc  
modum ad proelium incitat. "Hic septimus  
est annus, milites, postquam Ordovices debel-  
lavistis. Hodie a Caledonibus victoriam reportate.  
5 Hi se in silvis montibusque suis adhuc occulta-  
6 verunt; hos, homines ignavos, facile in fugam  
dabitis." Et signum pugnandi dedit. Tres  
legiones Romanae et undecim milia auxiliorum in  
campo lato stabant: Caledones in collibus suos collo-  
caverant. Primo Caledones missilia Romanorum  
vitabant. Et ipsi multa missilia in Romanos  
iactabant. Sed tandem cohortes illae Batavorum  
ad colles appropinquaverunt, et Caledones ex loco  
14 propulsaverunt. Nam hi iustum proelium tolerare  
non poterant. Interea equites auxiliorum eos  
velut indagine circumdederant. Decem milia  
trucidaverunt vel vulneraverunt. Nonnulli ex  
18 Caledonibus uxores liberosque suos ipsi morti  
dederunt. Nox finis fuit trucidationis. Postridie  
atrox spectaculum erat: corpora inhumata, casae  
crematae, silentium, solitudo.

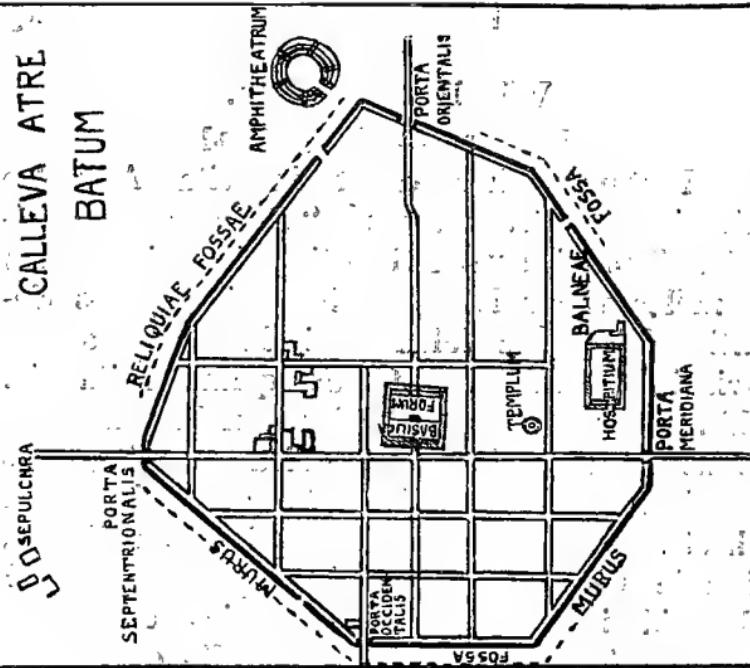
## VII. Pax Romana.

[Comparatives of Adjectives.]

14. Postquam hoc caput in vita Agricolae lectitavimus, patruus meus "Haec narrat Tacitus ipse" inquit: "sed si testimonium eius verum est, nullus victor Romanus humanior, nullus clementior fuit quam Iulius Agricola. Nulla autem provincia turbulentior fuerat quam Britannia. Nulli hostes Romanorum fortiores, nulli audaciores fuerant quam Britanni et Caledones et gentes Cambriae. Quis ex omnibus Romanis se iustiorem in hostes debellatos praestitit, quis clementiorem, quis minus saevum et crudelem, quam Agricola? Sed quid inhumanius, quid saevius est quam bellum? Atque nulli hostes in bello crudeliores fuerunt quam Romani. Nihil minus clemens erat quam hostes debellatos in servitatem deportare. Nam mors pulchra minus misera est quam servitus. Omnibus hominibus vita cara est; sed viris liberis libertas carior est quam vita. Atque nulli homines unquam acriores defensores libertatis suae fuerunt quam Britanni. Nihil pulchrius existimabant quam libertatem, nihil miserius quam servitatem." 21

[Superlatives of Adjectives.]

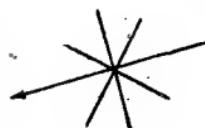
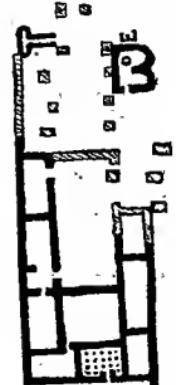
15. "Omnia bella saeva et inhumana sunt. Omnium autem bellorum saevissima et inhumani-  
ssima fuerunt bella illa temporibus antiquis  
contra gentes barbaras pugnata. Romani hostes  
crudelissimi plerumque fuerunt. Sed quid utilius  
fuit toti orbi terrarum quam imperium Romanum?  
Et imperio Romano nullum maius periculum erat



RELIQUIAE VILLÆ  
ROMANAÆ IN INSULA  
VECTI SITÆ.

- A. Atrium.
- B. Triclinium.
- C. Culina.
- D. Vestibulum.
- E. Pulena.

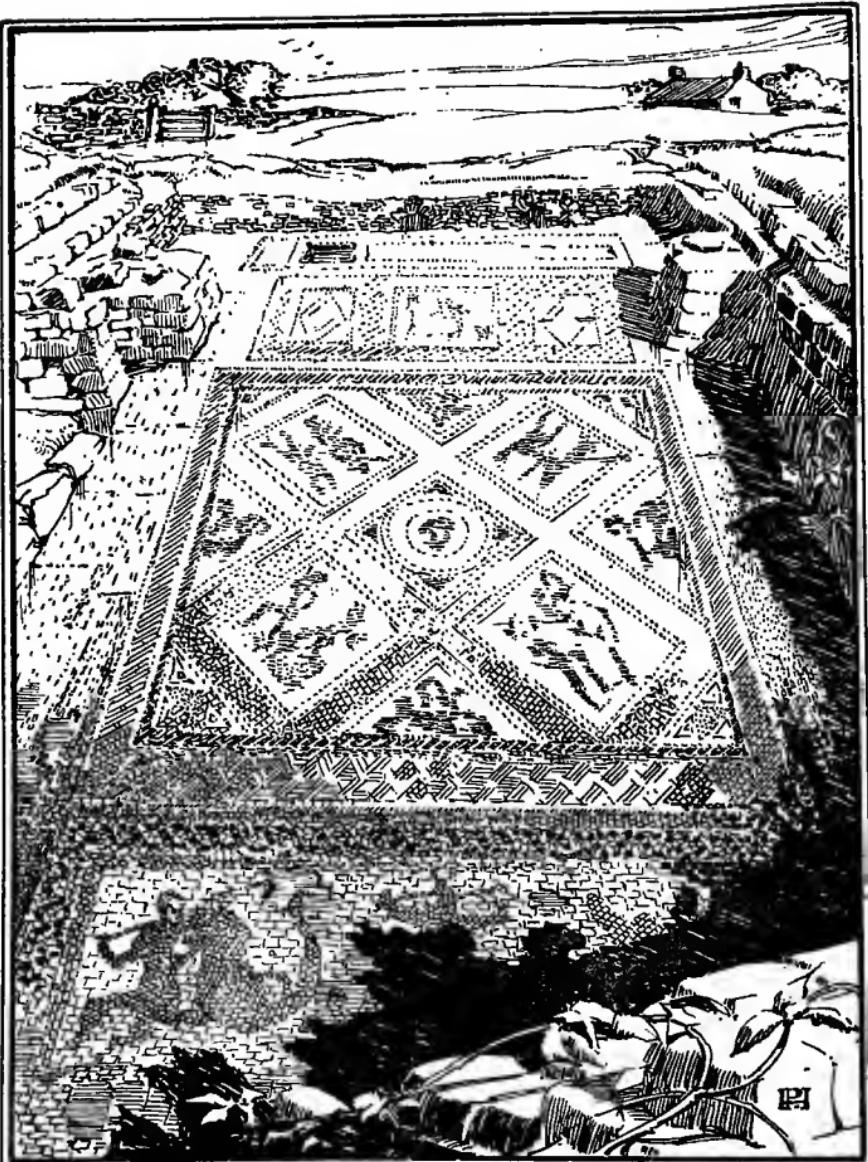
XX PASSUS



quam rebelliones populorum barbarorum. Pax illa Romana etiam populis subiectis utilissima fuit. Homines feros et inhumanos a studio belandi ad vitam humaniorem et ad litteras, artes, scientias revocavit. Romani Britanniam viis optimis et aedificiis pulcherrimis celeberrimisque, templis, basilicis, foris, villis, ludis litterariis, ornaverunt. In ludis litterariis filii principum Britannicorum linguae Latinae operam dabant. Itaque Britanni iram iniuriasque suas paulatim oblivioni dabant. Libertatis suae defensores fortissimi et acerrimi fuerant. Sed tributum Romanum tolerabant, si iniuriae aberant. Multae hodie extant in Britannia reliquiae aedificiorum illorum Romanorum. Callevae Atrebatum reliquias pulcherrimas basilicae, fori, templi, amphitheatri, balnearum, murorum spectavi; et in insula Vecti extant pavimenta tessellata villae Romanae, primo saeculo post Christum natum aedificatae. Sed iam ante tempora Agricolae nonnullae ex gentibus Britannicis mediocriter humanae fuerant. Incolas Cantii Caesar in libro quinto Belli Gallici ‘omnium Britannorum humanissimos’ vocat.”

[Passive Voice of 1st Conjugation—Present, Past Imperf., Future.]

16. Medius erat mensis September cum patruus meus haec de Britannia Romana explicavit. Marcus et Alexander tum aderant: nam pridie Dubris adventaverant et apud nos pernoctaverant. Et patruo meo necesse erat eis de rebellione Galgaci et Caledonum narrare. Nam historia patriae suae magnopere delectantur. Tum ille “Nonne recte” ?



PAVIMENTVM·TESELLATVM·VILLAEROMANAЕ  
IN·INSVL·VECTI·SITAE

inquit “Agricola a Tacito laudatur? Nam ab aliis imperatoribus Romanis oppida expugnabantur, agri vastabantur, nationes barbarae debellabantur; sed Agricola Britannos non solum debellavit sed etiam ad vitam humaniorem revocavit.” Et Alexander “Magnopere delector” inquit “si victor iustus et clemens fuit. Sed num hic vir omnia illa aedificia Romana aedificavit?” Et ille “Britannia per quattuor saecula aedificiis Romanis ornabatur. Multae ex illis reliquias posterioris aetatis sunt.”

17. Tum Marcus “Num filii principum Britannorum studio linguae Latinae delectabantur?” inquit. Et ille “Fili Britannorum antiquorum animo acri et impigro erant; linguae Latinae libenter operam dabant. Agricola eos aptiores esse ad studia litterarum affirmabat quam Gallorum pueros. Et Martialis, poeta Romanus illius aetatis, Britannos carmina sua cantavisse affirmat. Vos hodierni pila et folle delectamini.” Et ego “Nonne tu ipse, patrue mi patruissime, corporis certaminibus delectaris? Magna est scientia pilam dextra laevaque captare.” Et ille “Adulescentulus” inquit “illa scientia satis delectabar; cum senex fuero, fortasse non delectabor.” Nos cachinnamus. Nam patruus meus ludo trigonali magnopere delectatur. Tu, mi patrue, huius ludi peritissimus es:

Nec tibi mobilitas minor est, si forte volantem  
Aut geminare pilam iuvat aut revocare cadentem

18

19

ut est apud poetam Romanum. Mutato nomine de te, patrue, fabula narratur.

20

### VIII. Castellum Rutupinum.

[Questions and Exclamations.]

† 18. Postridie inter ientaculum amita mea “Caēlum hodie serenissimum est” inquit: “cur non Rutupias hodie ambulatis?” Et ego “Cur non tu quoque, amita, et Lydia nobiscum ambulatis?” “Nimis longa est via” inquit. Sed patruus meus “Vehiculō commeare potestis. Quota hora nunc est?” Et illa “Nondum tertia hora est.” Tum ille “Quinta hora in viam vos date: ante nos Rutupias adventabitis. Cum ruinas castelli spectaverimus, omnes in vehiculo una domum properabimus.” Tum Lydia “Quantopere delectabor si ruinas Castelli Rutupini aliquando spectare potero!” Et amitae meae propositum gratissimum erat. “Sed nonne melius erit” inquit “in castello cenare? Nam sic non necesse erit domum festinare.” Tum nos pueri exclamavimus: “Euge optime! prandium nobiscum portabimus; post prandium ruinas castelli visitabimus. Deinde in castello cenabimus. Sic erit!” Et amita mea “Quando in viam vos dabitis?” inquit. Et nos “Statim sine mora” inquimus.

[*qui, quae, quod and quis, quid—in questions.*]

19. Inter viam Marcus patrum meum de vitoria illa a Caledonibus reportata interrogavit.  
2 Marcus.—Quis fuit ille Galgacus? Num rex antiquus Scotorum fuit?

*Patruus meus.*—Nulli Scotti eo tempore in Caledonia erant. Nondum in Caledoniam migraverant.

*M.*—Quid igitur erat nomen incolarum Caledoniae, si non Scotti erant?

*P.*—Caledonia eo tempore a Pictis aliisque gentibus Caledoniis habitabatur.

*M.*—Qui erant Picti?

*P.*—Difficilis est quaestio. De origine Pictorum viri docti disputant.

*M.*—Quo tempore Scotti in Caledoniam migraverunt?

*P.*—Quinto saeculo post Christum natum.

*M.*—Qua ex terra migraverunt?

*P.*—Ex Hibernia eos in Caledoniam migravisse scriptores historici affirmant.

*M.*—Quem igitur primum regem Scotorum fuisse affirmant?

*P.*—Fergus primus rex Scotorum nominatur.

*M.*—Cuius partis Caledoniae rex fuit?

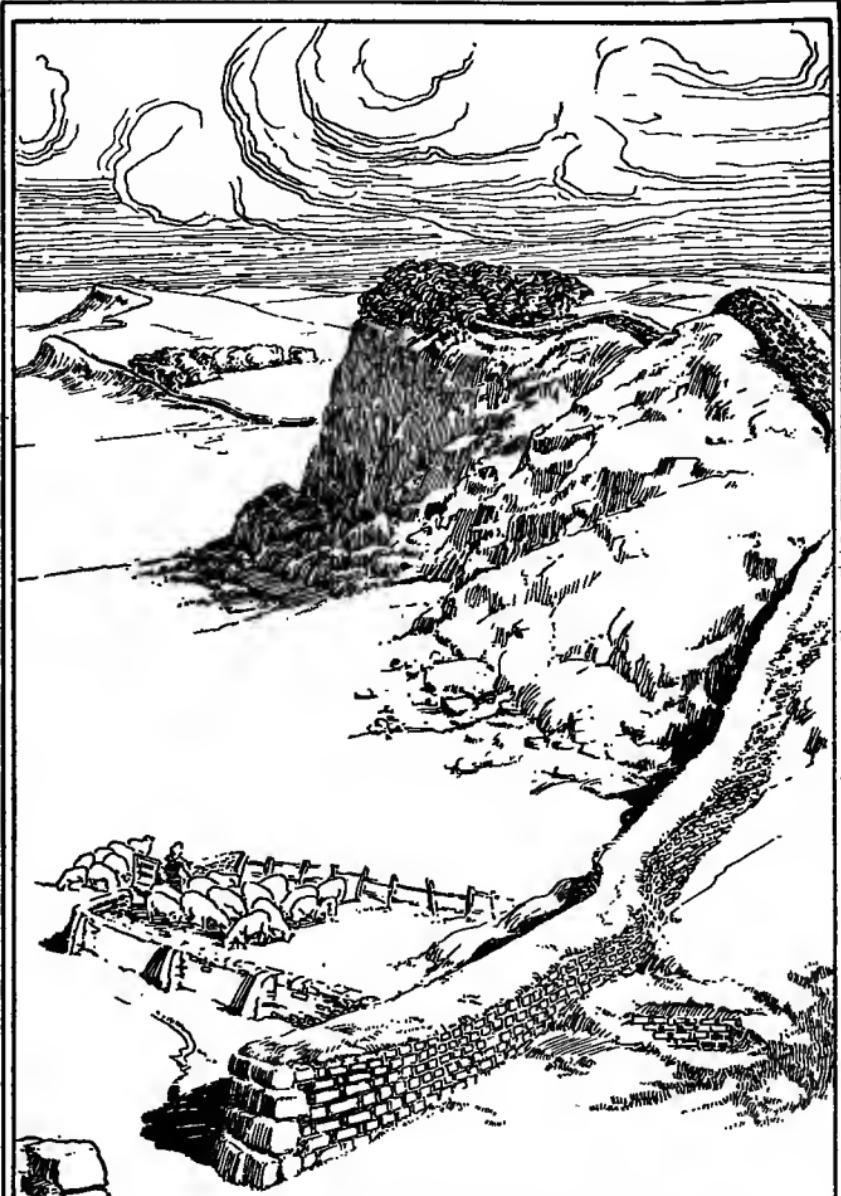
*P.*—Partis meridiana.

*M.*—Itaque Galgacus fortasse Pictus fuit.

*P.*—Fortasse; sed nihil de eo notum est.

[*qui, quae, quod*—in clauses which are not questions.]

20. Tum Alexander “Caledonia” inquit “ut spero, nunquam subiecta fuit Romanis: nam maiores mei ex Caledonia oriundi sunt.” Nos cachinnamus. Et patruus meus “Caledones per quattuor illa saecula saepe rebellaverunt, et Romanos bello vexaverunt. Itaque necesse fuit Hadriano, qui secundo saeculo post Christum natum princeps Romanorum fuit, magnum illud vallum inter Luguvallium et Pontem Aelium vel Segedunum aedicare; cuius reliquiae hodie spectantur. Et



HAROLD PERCIVAL, 1985

# VALLVM·HADRIANI

Antoninus Pius, qui post eum princeps fuit, alterum <sup>11</sup> vallum in ipsa Caledonia inter Clotam et Bodotriam aedificavit: cui nomen hodiernum est *Graham's Dyke*. Initio tertii saeculi Septimius Severus, quem <sup>13</sup> Romani paucis annis ante principem creaverant, <sup>14</sup> maximam expeditionem contra Caledones comparavit; postea autem ipse aegrotavit et Eburaci <sup>17</sup> exspiravit. Quo anno quinquaginta milia Romanorum a Caledonibus trucidata fuisse narrantur.” Tum Alexander exclamat “Euge, optime! O si sic <sup>20</sup> omnes!”

† 21. Et patruus meus “Tune, Alexander” <sup>1</sup> inquit “Pictus es?” Et ille “Scotus sum” inquit. Et patruus meus “Sed non Celtica origine es: nam <sup>3</sup> nomen tuum et fratri tui Germanicum est. Picti <sup>4</sup> et Scotti illi qui in Caledoniam migraverunt Celtae erant.” Et ille “Nonne toti insulae nostrae nomen est Britanniae? Nonne omnes Britanni sumus?” <sup>7</sup> Et patruus meus “Ita est” inquit; “nomen Britanniae a Britannis oriundum est. Sed nos ipsi ex multis et diversis nationibus oriundi sumus. Maxima pars Anglorum et Scotorum hodiernorum Germanica origine sunt.” Tum ego “Parentes mei” inquam “Celtica origine sunt; nam nomen nostrum Celticum est.” Sed patruus meus “Tu, Antoni, in <sup>14</sup> Africa Meridiana natus es; itaque Africanus es!” Et ego “Africa Meridiana pars imperii Britannici est; itaque Britannus sum.” Et ille “Ita est” inquit; “ubi libertas, ibi patria est.” <sup>18</sup>

[Second Conjugation—Present, Past Imperfect, Future, Active.]

1 22. Sed iam prope finem ambulationis nostrae  
 2 eramus, cum Alexander “Ecce, Rutupias video!”  
 3 inquit. Et castellum non procul aberat. Amita  
 4 mea et Lydia, quae ante nos adventaverant, cum nos  
 5 vident, “Salvete!” inquiunt; “gaudemus quod  
 ad tempus adestis. Sed nonne fatigati estis?” Et  
 7 patruus meus sic respondet: “Bene nos habemus.  
 8 Sed nos non pigebit hic paulum sedere et prandio  
 9 nos recreare. Hinc castellum in oculis habebimus.  
 10 Videlisne ruinas? Ut aetas omnia delet!”. Illae  
 11 rident; nam revera fatigati eramus. Castellum  
 Rutupinum, tertio saeculo a Romanis aedificatum,  
 in promunturio litoris situm est. Hodie procul a  
 14 mari iacet; sed temporibus Romanorum totus  
 campus, qui nunc inter castellum et oram maritimam  
 iacet, pars maris erat. Post prandium ad castellum  
 ipsum ambulavimus. Ruinae praeclarae sunt. Pars  
 murorum lateribus Romanis aedificata est; sed  
 18 multis locis deleti sunt. Murus qui ad septentriones  
 spectat quadringentos quadraginta pedes longus est,  
 viginti vel triginta pedes altus. Sed quondam  
 22 maiorem altitudinem habebat; nam fundamenta  
 murorum alte sub terra iacent. In angulis murorum  
 24 fundamenta turrium vides.

[Fourth Declension and Passives of Second Conjugation.]

1 23. Temporibus antiquis portus celeber hic  
 2 erat, cui nomen erat Portui Rutupino; naves ex  
 3 Gallia in Britanniam navigantes ad hunc portum  
 4 plerumque applicabantur. Nam omnium portuum  
 Britannicorum hic optimus erat. Castellum in



HAROLD PERCIVAL 1963

CASTELLVM·RVTVPINVM

6 litore portus stabat. Intra muros castelli est area  
 lata. In media area fundamentum aedificii antiqui  
 vides, quod formam crucis habet. Hodie 'Crux  
 Sancti Augustini' vocatur, sed temporibus Romanis  
 fundamentum phari erat, ut custos castelli affirmavit.  
 Sub hac cruce est aedificium subterraneum, quattuor  
 12 et quadraginta passus longum; quod intravimus.  
 13 Cereos in manu tenebamus, quos custos dederat;  
 nam locus obscurus erat. Ab hoc aedificio cuniculus,  
 in formam quadratam excavatus, sub magnam  
 16 partem areae pertinet. Dum per cuniculum ambu-  
 17 lamus, amita mea "Cui erat usui hic cuniculus?"  
 inquit. Et custos sic respondet: "Piget me quod  
 19 de usu cuniculi nihil affirmare possum. Usui fortasse  
 20 erat, si castellum obsidebatur: ecce puteus altus, ex  
 21 quo aqua paeberi poterat." Postquam haec spec-  
 tavimus, iterum circum muros ambulavimus. Dum  
 23 ad dextrum cornu castelli stamus, patruus meus  
 nobis reliquias amphitheatri Romani monstravit,  
 quod non procul aberat. Magna multitudo num-  
 morum Romanorum in castello servantur; ex quibus  
 unum mihi custos venumdedit. Tum custodem  
 28 valere iubemus, et ad cenam properamus.

## IX. Angli et Saxones.

[Second Conjugation—Perfect Stem, Active.]

24. Inter cenam nos pueri "Quis hoc castellum  
 2 delevit?" inquimus. Et patruus meus "De for-  
 3 tuna castelli nihil constat" inquit; "aetas fortasse  
 muros delevit. Sed vos mihi respondete. Cuius  
 5 nomen hic paecipuo honore habetur?" Aqua  
 6 haerebat: nihil habuimus respondere. Et amita

mea “ Nonne memoria tēnetis ? ” inquit. Tum Lydia, quae librum de historia Anglica in manibus nuper habuerat, “ Angli et Saxones ” inquit “ in <sup>9</sup> hunc angulum Cantii cursum tenuerunt.” Et ille <sup>10</sup> “ Verum est ” inquit; “ nam anno quadringentesimo quadragesimo nono Hengistus et Horsa ad insulam Tanatim, quae tum revera insula erat, naves suas <sup>13</sup> applicaverunt. Locus ipse duo tantum vel tria milia passuum a castello Rutupino iacet.” Tum <sup>15</sup> illa “ Nonne ab angulo Cantii Angli nomen suum habuerunt ? ” Nos pueri risimus. Sed amita mea <sup>17</sup> “ Sic nuper affirmavit vir doctus. Atque nomen ipsum Cantii nihil aliud significat quam promunturium vel angulum.” Tum patruus meus “ Sed Tacitus populum Germaniae Inferioris commemorat qui nomen habebat Anglorum ; pars Sueborum erant.” Et Lydia “ Fortasse in angulo Germaniae habitabant ” inquit. Et ille “ In paeninsula Cimbrica revera habitavisse affirmantur ; et duo illa verba ‘ angulus ’ et ‘ Cantium ’ Germanica sunt.” <sup>26</sup>

† 25. “ Sed de ‘ Hengisto et Horsa ’ ” inquit “ non cogitabam cum interrogavi. Quis alias vir clarus hic praecipuo honore habetur ? ” Aqua iterum haesit : nos nihil respondimus. Sed ille “ Abhinc annos duos saecula tredecim fuerant, ex quo Sanctus Augustinus, nuntius verbi divini, cum parva manu ministrorum fidorum huc cursum tenuit. Nam anno quingentesimo nonagesimo septimo post Christum natum Gregorius Primus, pontifex Romanus, Augustinum notitiam Dei veri in Anglia docere iusserat. Itaque Augustinus ex Gallia <sup>5</sup> in Britanniam navigavit, et navem suam ad insulam <sup>6</sup>

Tanatim applicavit. Eo tempore Aedilberctus rex Cantii erat, qui uxorem Christianam, nomine Berc tam, habebat, filiam regis Francorum. Itaque rex <sup>16</sup> Christianis benignus fuit, atque Duroverni, in capite <sup>17</sup> regni sui, eis domum praebuit.”

<sup>1</sup> † 26. Tum amita mea : “ Sed antequam rex Christianis domum praebuit, sermonem cum eis habuit, dum in clivo gramineo sedebant, unde urbem Durovernū procul videre poterant. Vel, ut non nulli libri historici affirmant, Christiani ad ipsos muros Castelli Rutupini navem suam applicaverant, et per fenestram castelli cum rege sermonem habuerunt. Nam eo tempore aqua portus Rutupini usque ad muros castelli pertinebat. Rex Christianis <sup>10</sup> in hunc modum respondisse narratur. *Pulchra sunt verba et promissa vestra ; sed nova sunt et incerta ; nec deos antiquos, quos per multos annos ego et populus meus adoravimus, oblivioni dare possumus. Sed, quia ex terra peregrina huc cursum tenuistis, et in animo habetis ea docere quae vera esse existimatis, non prohibebo vos in regno meo manere et notitiam Dei vestri docere.* Itaque domum vobis Duroverni praebeo. Et basilicam Sancti Martini eis dedit.”

[Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive—how expressed.]

27. Tum nos “ Christiani igitur fuerant in Britannia iam ante adventum Sancti Augustini ? ” inquimus. Et ille “ Fuerant ” inquit ; “ nam basilicae a Christianis Britanicis iam temporibus Romanis <sup>5</sup> aedificatae erant, quarum reliquias vos Dubris <sup>6</sup> vidistis et ego Callevae vidi. Post principatum Neronis multi Christiani in imperio Romano fuerunt ; nam anno primo et sexagesimo post Christum natum

Sanctus Paulus Romam captivus deportatus est. <sup>8</sup>  
 Et uxor illius Auli Plautii, qui iam aetate principis  
 Claudii Britanniae praefuit, Christiana fuisse existi-  
 tumatur. Nam ‘superstitutionis peregrinae’ accusata  
 est. Nomen ei fuit Pomponiae Graecinae. Sed <sup>12</sup>  
 Angli et Saxones, qui multos deos adorabant, basili-  
 cas Christianas plerumque deleverant. Basilica <sup>15</sup>  
 autem Sancti Martini, quae Duroverni erat, non  
 omnino deleta erat. Durovernus igitur intraverunt <sup>17</sup>  
 nuntii illi verbi divini, crucem argenteam et simu-  
 lacrum Christi in manibus tenentes, et carmen <sup>19</sup>  
 sacrum cantantes: *Iram tuam ab hac urbe et a domo* <sup>20</sup>  
*tua sancta remove, o Deus; quia peccavimus: alleluia!*  
 Sic Beda, vir venerabilis, narrat.”

[Fifth Declension.]

28. Et amita mea: “Cur non illud in memoriam revocas, quod animum pontificis illius Gregorii misericordia Anglorum commoverat? Nam multis annis ante in foro Romano quondam fuit, cum pueros nonnullos facie pulchra, oculis caeruleis, capillis flavis vidit. Misericordia commotus est: nam illi pueri servi erant et venumdabantur. Itaque mercatores, quorum in manu pueri erant, sic interrogavit: “Quae est patria eorum?” inquit. Et mercatores “Ex Anglia sunt” inquiunt, “cuius incolae huius faciei sunt.” Tum Gregorius “Num <sup>11</sup> Christiani sunt?” “Non sunt” inquiunt. Et ille “Heu!” inquit; “quam pulchra est facies eorum <sup>13</sup> quos Rex Tenebrarum ministros habet!” Deinde <sup>14</sup> alia interrogavit: “Quid est nomen gentis eorum?” inquit. Responderunt eos esse Anglos. Et ille <sup>16</sup> “Recte!” inquit; “nam angelicam faciem habent: <sup>17</sup>

<sup>18</sup> non Anglos sed Angelos eos vocari oportet. Sed quid est nomen illius partis Angliae in qua habitabant ? ” “ Deira vocatur, quae pars Northumbriae est ” inquiunt. Sed ille “ Recte ! ” inquit ; “ nam <sup>22</sup> de ira Dei ad fidem revocandi sunt.” Postremo “ Quis est rex illius partis Angliae ? ” inquit. “ Aella vocatur ” inquiunt. Tum “ Alleluia ! ” inquit ; “ nam <sup>26</sup> dies adventat cum carmen omnium carminum optimum in Anglia cantabitur ! ”

<sup>1</sup> † 29. Sed finis diei illius belli iam adventabat, et necesse erat domum properare. Intra semihoram <sup>3</sup> vehiculum paratum erat, et in viam nos dedimus. Dum in vehiculo sedebamus, muros castelli luna plena illustratos vidimus. Pulchrum erat spectaculum. Mox domi eramus. Nos pueri longo die fatigati et semisomni eramus. “ Non pigebit vos ” inquit amita mea “ ad lectum properare.” Ea <sup>9</sup> nocte Marcus et Alexander apud nos manserunt. Postridie Dubras redambulaverunt.

<sup>1</sup> † 30. Hodie iam quinque dies post Idus Septembris elapsi sunt, et dies ille ater appropinquat qui ultimus feriarum erit. Omnium dierum ille tristissimus est qui finis est feriarum. Nam triste <sup>5</sup> est verbum ‘ vale,’ cum scholae instant. Intra paucos dies patruum meum et amitam meam et <sup>7</sup> Lydiam valere iubebo. Quam bellae fuerunt feriae <sup>8</sup> a mane usque ad vesperum ! Quae mutatio rerum <sup>9</sup> instat ! Pauci erunt dies feriati, multi profesti.

<sup>10</sup> Ille profestus erit, per quem tria verba silentur :  
Et qui festus erit, mane profestus erat.

<sup>12</sup> Nam tribus illis verbis tres res significantur quae pueris carissimae sunt—pila, follis, trigon.

**COMMENTARII DE VITA MEA  
AD VENTAM BELGARUM  
ANNIS MDCCCXCIX ET MDCCCC.**

**X. Res Africanae.**

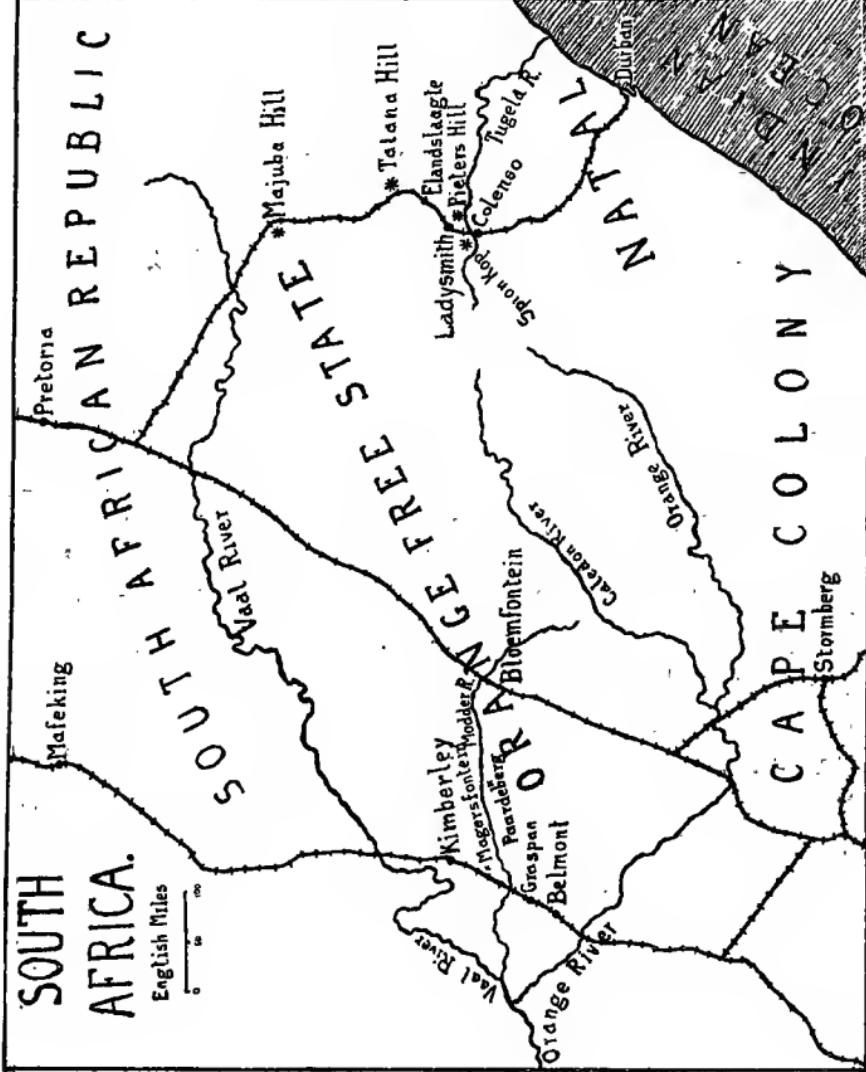
[Recapitulation of Verbs.]

† 31. Kalendae sunt hodie Octobres. Apud magistrum meum iam septem dies sum. Qui, cum me vidit, "Salve" inquit; "ut vales? Fueruntne tibi feriae prosperae?" Et ego "Satis recte" inquam. Et ille "Ubi fuisti per ferias?" "In Cantio fui" inquam "apud patrum meum, qui te salvere iubet." "Num quid novi" inquit "inter ferias vidisti?" "Castellum Rutupinum" inquam "vidi: mecum una fuerunt Marcus et Alexander." "Recte" inquit; "num ostreas illic natas gustavistis?" "Nullas gustavimus" inquam; "sed cur interrogas?" "Quia temporibus antiquis ostreae Rutupinae praeclarae fuerunt" inquit. Et ego ridens "Piget me" inquam "quod mihi ante hunc diem nihil de re notum fuit." Tum ille "Num pater tuus" inquit "tibi ex Africa Meridiana litteras nuper dedit?" "Non dedit" inquam. Et ille "Magna discordia est" inquit "inter Ministrum nostrum qui Coloniis praeest et Patruum Paulum, ut vocatur, cui cognomen est *Krüger*: is praefectus est Reipublicae Africanae Batavorum."

# SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC

# SOUTH AFRICA.

English Miles  
0 10 20



[Third Conjugation—Present, Active and Passive.]

32. Tum ego “Quae est causa, quaeso, discordiae ?” Et ille “Longum est dicere. Sed inter Britannos et colonos Batavos qui regionem trans Vahalem sitam colunt, multae fuerunt causae discordiarum. Nunc de peregrinis, qui Rempublicam Africanam incolunt, disputatur. De hac re litterae a Ministro nostro ad Patruum Paulum et ab hoc ad illum iam per multos menses mittuntur. Sed aquam perdimus : currit hora. Patruus Paulus in hunc modum scribit : ‘Peregrinos illos’ inquit ‘in civitatem non admitto, quia nimis multi sunt, et quia non boni cives erunt.’ Et re vera plures sunt numero quam cives Batavi. ‘Tantam multitudinem’ inquit ‘in qua sunt non solum Britanni sed etiam Americani, Germani, Francogalli, Helvetii, Iudei, ceteri, in civitatem admittere non possum.’ Sed Minister noster sic dicit : ‘Oportet eos admitti : nam nos Britanni peregrinos, qui in Coloniam nostram migrant, omnes in civitatem admittimus. Cur igitur Britanni qui in rempublicam vestram migrant in civitatem non admittuntur ?’ Sed Patruus Paulus ‘Haec omnia ad Britanniam non pertinent,’ inquit : ‘Britannos res suas curare oportet.’ Difficilis est quaestio. Sed maxima causa irae est quod Batavi peregrinos iniuriis contumeliisque vexant ; ignavos vocant, quibus usus armorum denegatus est.”

## XI. Origo Reipublicae Africanae.

[Third Conjugation—Past Imperfect, Active and Passive.]

33. Postridie nos pueri, qui classis quartae

discipuli sumus, magistrum de origine Reipublicae Africanae Batavorum interrogavimus. “ Qui sunt illi coloni ? ” inquimus ; “ quid significat nomen ipsum *Boer* ? ” Et ille “ Coloni illi Africani ” inquit “ originem suam a Batavis Europaeis ducunt. Nomen *Boer* lingua Batava nihil aliud significat quam ‘ agricolam ’ vel ‘ colonum.’ Caesar ‘ insulam Batavorum ’ in libro quarto Belli Gallici commemorat. Ea insula inter Rhenum et Vahalem iacebat : nam Rhenus, ubi in Oceanum influebat, in duo flumina dividebatur, sicut nunc quoque dividitur, quorum unum Vahalis nominabatur. Insulae quae inter haec flumina iacebant ‘ a nationibus feris barbarisque ’ incolebantur, ut Caesar dicit. Martialis, poeta Romanus, eos homines magnis et robustis membris, capillis flavis vel rufis fuisse dicit. Tacitus Batavos omnium nationum Germaniae Inferioris fortissimos fuisse dicit ; ex interioribus partibus Germaniae propter discordiam domesticam migraverant. Insula eorum pars imperii Romani erat ; sed Batavi acerrimi defensores libertatis suae fuerunt. Tributum Romanum non tolerabant.”

[Imperative Active of the Third Conjugation.]

34. “ Itaque, ut Tacitus dicit, ‘ manebat honor et antiquae societatis insigne.’ Vos pueri capita undetricesimum Germaniae et duodecimum libri quarti Historiarum legite. In usum proeliorum reservabantur, et in exercitibus Romanis militabant. Periti erant natandi. Cohors Batavorum, quae in exercitu Agricolae militabat, quondam trans fretum in Monum insulam natavit.

† Nos Britanni quoque originem nostram prae-  
cipue a populis Germanicis ducimus : nam Angli et  
Saxones, qui quinto saeculo in Britanniam infunde- <sup>11</sup>  
bantur, nationes Germaniae Inferioris erant. Et  
iam ante tempora C. Iulii Caesaris multi Germani  
in Britanniam meridianam migraverant : nam  
Belgas Germanica origine fuisse Caesar dicit, et a <sup>15</sup>  
Belgis Venta Belgarum nomen suum dicit. Itaque <sup>16</sup>  
nos Britanni cognati sumus colonorum Batavorum.  
Origine et nos et illi Germani sumus : animo quoque <sup>18</sup>  
germanos esse nos oportet. Nam nomen German- <sup>19</sup>  
orum nihil aliud significat quam ‘fratres.’ Multum  
valet communio sanguinis.”

† 35. “Batavi, qui regionem trans Vahalem sitam  
incolunt, Coloniam nostram Africanam quondam  
incolebant. Sed abhinc annos quinque et sexaginta  
magna discordia erat ; et Batavi trans flumen illud  
Africanum migraverunt, quod ex flumine Europaeo  
Vahalem nominaverunt, et novam rempublicam sub  
principatu et patrocinio Britannico condiderunt, <sup>7</sup>  
cui nomen Reipublicae Africanae dederunt. Ex <sup>8</sup>  
quo tempore multae discordiae fuerunt inter nos et  
illos colonos. Abhinc annos duodeviginti bellum  
fuit, in quo Batavi victoriam a parvo exercitu  
Britannico in colle Maiuba reportaverunt. Qua  
ex re magnos sibi spiritus in re militari sumunt. <sup>13</sup>  
Dicunt se Britannos bello vincere et in mare pellere <sup>14</sup>  
posse. Haec somnia sunt ; sed periculum est belli  
domestici. Nam multi ex Batavis qui Coloniam  
nostram incolunt novis rebus student. Societatem <sup>17</sup>  
quandam condiderunt cui nomen est Societati <sup>18</sup>  
Africanae ; cuius consilium est omnes Batavos qui

Africam Meridianam incolunt in unam Rempubli-  
 eam Batavam consociare. Nobis Britannis necesse  
 est principatum nostrum totius Africæ Meridianæ  
 obtinere, et imperium Britannicum, tantis laboribus  
 conditum, defendere."

## XII. Initium Belli.

[Third Conjugation—Future, Active and Passive.]

1      36. Magnum periculum belli esse magister noster  
 2 dicit. "In litteris" inquit "quas praefectus Britan-  
 3 nicus nuper ex Terra Natali dedit, Batavi magnas  
 4 copias conscribere nuntiantur. Nos duodecim tan-  
 5 tum milia militum in Terra Natali habemus; in  
 6 exercitu Batavorum multo plures sunt. Copias  
 7 maiores mox mittemus, coloniae defendendae  
 8 causa; sed si Batavi exercitum suum in Terram  
 9 Natalem ducent, quid prohibebit eos totam coloniam  
 10 percurrere, dum copiae nostrae in mari erunt?  
 Magnum exercitum in India habemus; sed is ad  
 12 hoc bellum non mittetur." Sic dicit magister noster.  
 Sed nos pueri bellum non formidamus. Colonias  
 14 nostras 'robur et aes triplex' navium longarum  
 15 Britannicarum defendet. 'Etiam atque etiam  
 16 pugnabimus et vincemus' ut est in carmine nostro  
 Anglo. Britannia est domina undarum. Si  
 bellum erit, pater meus ex Colonia litteras ad me  
 19 mox mittet, ut spero. Litteras quas scribet ad  
 20 patruum meum mittam; nam eas libenter leget.  
 Postea has et alias litteras colligam et in commen-  
 tarios meos exscribam. En litterarum ipsarum  
 exemplum!

[Third Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed with *s.*]

**37. PATRUUS ANTONIO SUO SALUTEM DICIT.**

Si vales, bene est ; ego valeo. Ex Africa semper aliquid novi ! Sic dicebant Graeci, et hodie quoque verum est. Nam Batavi summa audacia ad nos litteras ultimas miserunt, in quibus bellum nobis indixerunt, nisi copias nostras, quae in coloniis nostris Africanis quaeque adhuc in mari sunt, intra diem deduxerimus. O audaciam singularem Stephani Joannis Pauli, qui praefectus Reipublicae Africanae est ! Nos nihil respondebimus ; nullas copias deducemus ; immo maiores mittemus. Quae est causa tantae audaciae, tantae stultitiae ? Sed bellum non parvum erit. Batavi sexaginta milia virorum habebunt. Nam Orangia, cui nomen est Liberae Civitati, se cum Republica Africana consociavit, et magnam multitudinem virorum ad bellum promisit. Mirum est quod haec civitas nobis bellum indixit. Nam nulla causa discordiae est inter nos et Orangiam. Amita tua tibi multam salutem dicit. Cura te diligenter. Vale. Die quinto ante Idus Octobres scripsi.

20

[Third Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed without any suffix.]

**38. PATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM PLURIMAM DICIT. \***

Si vales, bene est ; ego et mater tua valemus.

‘Africa terribili tremit horrida terra tumultu.’

Num versum illum poetae antiqui legisti ? Hodie quoque dici potest. Duobus in proeliis hostes vic-

2

3

4

\* Hae litterae Idibus Novembribus in Angliam redditae sunt.

5 imus, et Terram Natalem, ut poteramus, defendimus.  
 6 Primam victoriam die tertio decimo ante Kalendas  
 7 Novembres ad Collem Talanam reportavimus, qui  
     in angulo Terrae Natalis situs est. Hostes copias  
 9 suas in collem collegerant; sed duae cohortes Hi-  
 10 bernicae et una Anglica impigre procucurrerunt et  
 11 hostes ex colle pepulerunt. Sed legatus Britanni-  
 12 cus, graviter vulneratus, post proelium exspiravit.  
     Postridie alter exercitus Britannicus hostes ad  
 14 Saltum Cervinum, inter Collem Talanam et Castra  
     Mariana situm, vicit. Batavi tum quoque in monti-  
 16 bus stabant; per totum diem et nostri et hostes for-  
 17 tissime pugnaverunt; sub vesperum tres cohortes  
     Anglorum et Scotorum una cum manu equitum  
 19 Africanorum levis armaturae montes ascenderunt et  
     hostes in fugam dederunt. Batavi duo tormenta  
 21 amiserunt una cum vexillo in quo erat insigne Rei-  
     publicae Batavae Consociatae. Vale, mi carissime,  
 23 et scribe mox ad nos. Haec ex Colonia die  
 24 septimo ante Kalendas Novembres scripsi.

[Third Conjugation—Perfect, Pluperfect, Fut. Perf., Passive.]

### 39. PATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM.\*

1 S.V.B.E.E.V. Has litteras, mi fili, non libenter  
     leges. Nam de fortuna mutata dicam. Nostri  
     post victorias illas, de quibus in prioribus litteris  
     scripsi, loca obtinere non poterant. Itaque  
 5 copiae nostrae reductae sunt et circum Castra  
 6 Marianae collectae; ubi die tricesimo mensis Octobris  
 7 proelium ante oppidum commissum est. Quo in  
     proelio nostri laboraverunt. Sed opportune accidit

---

\* Litterae die tertio et vicesimo mensis Novembris redditae.

quod nonnulla tormenta navalia, quae classiarii nostri in ipso tempore apportaverant, nostris <sup>10</sup> auxilio fuerunt. Post proelium autem magnum in- commodum nuntiatum est. Nam proxima nocte duae cohortes nostrorum in collem, qui ad sep- tentriones situs est, missae erant, loci occupandi <sup>13</sup> causa. Sed in itinere mulis, qui tormenta nostra trahebant, terror subito incidit, et omnes velut furore acti in fugam se dederunt, arma virosque in <sup>17</sup> tenebris praecipitantes. Postridie mane nostri se in loco iniquo esse viderunt : ab hostibus undique <sup>19</sup> circumdati erant. Fortiter sed frustra se de- fenderunt, et tandem coacti sunt se dedere. Haec <sup>21</sup> Nonis Novembribus scripsi. <sup>22</sup>

### XIII. Milites Reginae.

[Fourth Conjugation—Present, Active and Passive.]

40. Hodie dies est tertius mensis Novembris. Nos pueri multa de bello audimus. Veniunt fere cotidie litterae ab amicis nostris, quae magno studio leguntur et custodiuntur. Magnopere nos delectat de ‘Militibus Reginae’ audire et cantare. Hodie magister noster, postquam in scholam venit “Audite, pueri,” inquit “quod in actis diurnis legi. Batavi copias nostras circumdederunt. Castra Mariana duodecim milia nostrorum cus- todient. Sed non facile erit oppidum munire. In campo iacet, quem colles undique circumdant. In collibus Batavi tormenta sua magna posuerunt, <sup>12</sup> unde missilia omnis generis in oppidum effundere poterunt. Numero nostros multum superant. Sed quinquaginta milia virorum in Africam Meridianam nuper emisimus.”

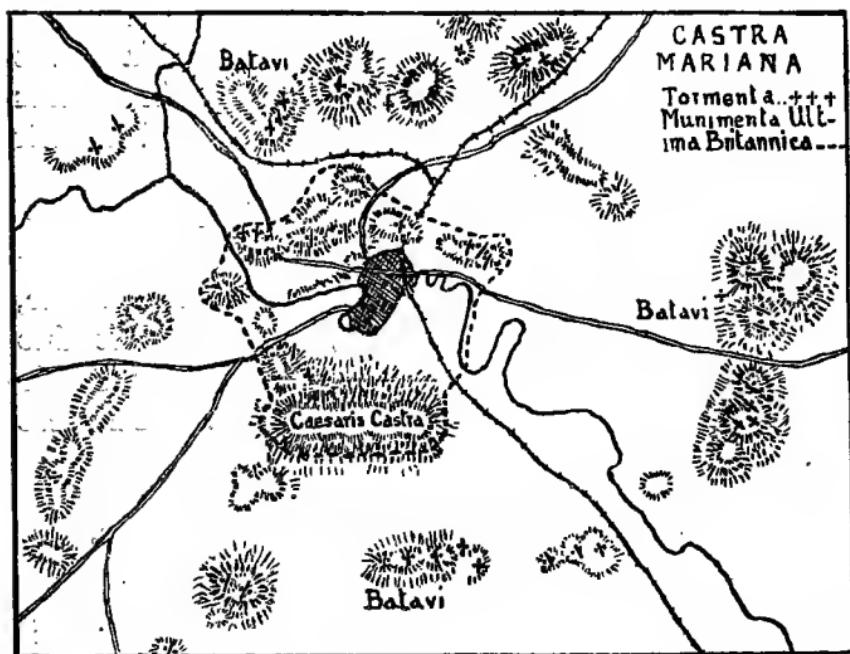
[Fourth Conjugation—Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

41. “Sed cur non multo ante” inquit “bellum paravimus? Nam proverbium est ‘in pace bellum para.’ Crebri nuntii de periculo belli veniebant. Batavos enim bellum per multos annos parare audiebamus: urbes suas muniebant, milites ex omnibus partibus Europae conscribebant. Sed nos nihil paravimus. Nesciebamus enim periculum verum esse. Nunc scimus: sed num sero scimus? Magnum exercitum nuper emisimus: sed quando in Africam Meridianam adveniet? Num ante adventum exercitus nostri de aliis victoriis Batavorum audiemus? Quis Terram Natalem a Batavis custodiet, dum exercitus noster in mari erit? Nam sex milia milium passuum sunt inter nos et Promunturium Spei Bonae. Hostibus autem tota regio ubi pugnabitur, omnia vada omnium fluminum nota sunt.”

[Fourth Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

42. Hodie, qui est dies decimus mensis Novembris, de adventu in Africam Meridianam unius ex magnis illis navibus, quae ‘Castella’ nominantur, audivimus. A portu nostro Anglico ad Promunturium Spei Bonae intra viginti dies navigaverat. Heri advenit, et statim ad Portum Natalem missa est, quo intra paucos dies perveniet. Sed Castra Mariana ducenta fere milia passuum a Portu Natali distant. In illa autem navi est una cohors eorum qui patriam vocantem audiverunt. Imperator noster, cui cognomen est *Buller*, pridie Kalendas

Novembres advenerat. Interea nostri Castra Mariana fortiter custodiverunt. Ea loca quae muniri poterant muniverunt. Opportune vero accidit quod tormenta illa navalia, quae ad proelium ante oppidum commissum in ipso tempore advenerunt, nunc in oppido sunt.



#### XIV. Tria Oppida Obsessa.

[Verbs in *io* with Infinitive in *ere*—Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

#### 43. MATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM PLURIMAM.

S.V.B.E. Nos valemus. Has litteras, quas Nonis Decembribus scribebam, tu, mi Antoni, non ante ferias Natales accipies : et omnia quae scribere

poteram, iam ante adventum litterarum mearum  
 audiveris. Sed pauca verba ad te mittere cupiebam.  
 Cur tam diu nihil litterarum a te? Ut vales? Quid  
 tu et condiscipuli tui, Marcus et Alexander, inter  
 ferias facietis? Mox a te litteras accipiemus, ut  
 spero. Nos magnum dolorem ex bello capimus.  
 Batavi Castra Mariana iam plus quam triginta dies  
 obsident. Oppidum capere magnopere cupiunt,  
 et fortasse capient. Noctes diesque missilia omnis  
 generis in oppidum iaciunt, et impetus in nostros  
 faciunt. Nostri autem quid facere possunt? Deficit  
 cibus, deficit aqua. Vix somnum capere possunt.  
 Necesse est eis cuniculos et puteos in terra fodere.  
 Eo se recipiunt si tormenta Batavorum audiuntur;  
 sed pauci tormentis interficiuntur. Sic litterae,  
 quae per columbas mittuntur, nuntiant. Et duo  
 alia oppida Britannica, Adamantopolis et Statio  
 Bechuanarum, a Batavis obsidentur. Tu vero  
 mox rescribe. Etiam atque etiam vale.

## XV. Victoriae et Clades Britannicae.

[Verbs in *io* with Infinitive in *ere*—Perfect Stems.]

44. *Idibus Decenibribus scriptum.* Intra hos  
 viginti dies de tribus victoriis atque duabus  
 cladibus Britannicis nuntium accepimus. Exer-  
 citus Britannicus, in quo octo milia virorum erant,  
 per fines Orangiae iter faciebat, Adamantopolim  
 obsidione liberandi causa. Via per campos latos  
 et apertos ducebat; sed nonnullis in locis tumuli  
 erant, quos necesse erat superare. Hos Batavi,  
 velut aquilae nidos suos, insederant, et viam  
 custodiebant. Sed nostri impetus in eos fortissime

fecerunt, tumulos ceperunt, hostes in fugam con- 11  
 iecerunt. Quibus in proeliis, ad Montem Bellum et 12  
 Lacum Gramineum pugnatis, Custodes Regales et  
 classiarii nostri praecipuam laudem reportaverunt.  
 Inde iter ad Flumen Turbulentum incepérunt. 15  
 Dux autem Batavus, cui nomen est *Cronje*, in ripis  
 fluminis magnas fossas puteosque foderat, in 17  
 quibus copias suas et tormenta occultaverat. Ibi  
 per totum diem acerrime pugnatū est. Batavi 19  
 circiter quingentos ex nostris interfecérunt vel 20  
 vulneraverunt. Tandem nostri impetum in sinis-  
 tram partem fluminis fecerunt, et se traiecerunt. 22  
 Tum Batavi se ex proelio receperunt. 23

† 45. Haec victoria die duodetricesimo mensis No-  
 vembris reportata est. De qua patruus meus mihi  
 haec scripsit :—“ Victoria nostris non magno usui  
 erat, quia hostibus instare non poterant. Nam  
 legatus Britannicus nullos equites habebat. Pedi- 5  
 tes nostri ad huiusmodi bellum minus apti sunt.  
 Batavis, sicut Britannis antiquis, non mos est iusto 7  
 proelio pugnare. Equites eorum arma peditum por-  
 tant et pedibus pugnare possunt. Itaque mobili- 9  
 tatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis pre- 10  
 stant.”—Exercitus noster iam viginti tantum milia 11  
 passuum ab oppido obpresso aberat. Sed inter castra  
 nostra et Adamantopolim mons erat, Macrifontium  
 nomine, quem necesse erat superare. Legatus nos-  
 ter quattuor cohortes Caledonum praemisit, loci 13  
 occupandi causa. Sed Batavus suos in fossis, quas 14  
 ante montem foderat, in insidiis posuerat. De magna 15  
 clade Britannica accepta in actis diurnis haec legi. 16

† 46. "Silentio noctis per tenebras et imbre  
 Caledones agmine quadrato ad locum iter faciunt.  
 Subito aér ignibus tonitruque tremit; hostis autem  
 nusquam conspicitur. Sed ex omnibus fossis imber  
 mortifer missilium in ordines nostros effunditur,  
 et puncto temporis ducenti vel trecenti ex viris  
 illis fortissimis una cum legato mortui vel vulnerati  
 iacuerunt. Nostri in insidias inciderant. In tenebris  
 autem nullus erat usus oculorum; nec imperia in  
 tanto tumultu audiri vel accipi poterant. Ordines  
 igitur nostri perturbati et confusi sunt; arma virique,  
 alius super alium, praecipitabantur: non proelium  
 sed trucidatio fuit. Nostri ex loco mortifero, ut  
 poterant, se receperunt, vel viam per medios hostes  
 facere contenterunt. Plus quam septingentos viros  
 ex quattuor illis cohortibus amisimus." Haec  
 clades mane diei undecimi mensis Decembribus  
 accepta est. Pridie alia clades Britannica ex Colonia  
 nuntiata erat. Alius exercitus Britannicus ad  
 Montem Procellarum in insidias inciderat, et victus  
 erat. Nihil eorum quae apud nos agebantur hosti-  
 bus ignotum erat. Nam exploratores omnia  
 indicaverant.

† 47. Feriae Natales adventant. Intra tres dies  
 apud patruum meum ero. Dulce domum! Sed feriae  
 non hilare erunt. Nam de tertia clade, in Terra  
 Natali accepta, acta diurna haec nuntiant:—"Mag-  
 nus ille exercitus Britannicus, cui imperator noster  
 praeest, plus quam viginti milia virorum numero,  
 Castra Mariana obsidione liberare contendebat. Inter  
 nostros et oppidum fluebat Tugela, quem Batavi oc-

cupaverant et in ripis fossas suas mortiferas foderant. Mane diei quinti decimi mensis Decembbris imperator noster quattuor legiones suas ad proelium eduxit. Caelum caeruleum et serenum erat ; magnus calor solis. Legio Hibernica, quae in sinistro cornu erat, ad <sup>13</sup> ripas fluminis fortissime appropinquavit ; sed postquam quingentos vel sescentos viros amiserunt, se recipere coacti sunt. In dextro cornu tormenta nostra defensoribus nudata sunt ; quorum decem ab hostibus capta sunt, postquam ei qui tormentis ministrabant paene omnes interfecti sunt. Sed duo ex tormentis parva manus nostrorum <sup>20</sup> e loco mortifero recepit. Facinus pulcherrimum fuit. In ea manu fuit adulescens egregiae spei, nomine *Roberts.*" Fuit : nam is quoque, graviter vulneratus, postero die exspiravit. In eo proelio mille ducentos viros amisimus.



**XVI. Foedus nominis Britannici.**

[Present Injunctive of *sum.*]

1    48. Hodie Dies Natalis est Christi. Ante paucos  
 dies novus imperator Britannicus ad Promunturium  
 Spei Bonae navigavit. De quo patruus meus haec  
 dixit :—“ In hoc viro summa est scientia belli,  
 clarissima virtus, egregia fortuna. Magnum sibi  
 quondam nomen in India fecit ; nunc senex est,  
 7 septem et sexaginta annos natus. Et pater est  
 8 illius adolescentis qui ad Tugelam cecidit dum  
 9 facinus pulchrum et periculosum facit. Pater  
 mortem filii sui deplorat ; sed patriam ipsam vo-  
 11 cantem audivit. Sit ei iter prosperum ! Sit in  
 illo nomine Spei Bonae omen rerum prosperarum !  
 13 Nam nomen est omen, ut poeta Romanus dixit.  
 14 Quondam Promunturium Procellarum vocabatur.  
 Exercitui maximo ducentorum milium virorum  
 praeerit. Numquam post hominum memoriam  
 tantus exercitus trans mare transportatus est,  
 18 quantum nunc emisimus. Quod reipublicae nostrae  
 prosit ! ”

[Present Injunctive of First Conjugation.]

49. Postridie patruus meus haec ex actis diurnis  
 2 recitavit :—“ Ex Africa Meridiana nihil novi. Sed  
 3 magnitudo populi Britannici prope admirabilior in  
 rebus adversis quam in prosperis fuit. Opus magni  
 laboris erit, tot atque tam validos hostes vincere.  
 6 Sed etiam atque etiam pugnemus, donec vicerimus.  
 7 Deus nobis fortunam dedit ! Ne desperemus !  
 8 Festinemus lente, sicut Fabius ille Maximus fecit,  
 9 de quo poeta Romanus haec scripsit :

Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem. 10

Hoc bellum Britanniam, matrem tot filiarum  
egregiarum, cum coloniis suis in unius et maioris 12  
populi corpus consociavit.

Una dum Regina nostra est, unus in Reginam amor,  
Unum foedus omnis esto nominis Britannici ! 14  
15

Sic una voce exclamat Maior illa Britannia,  
cui sol numquam occidit. Coloniae autem nostrae 17  
liberae maximam sibi laudem esse iudicant, dicere 18  
posse :

Filia matris in domo,  
Domina sum tamen domi. 20

Tu, Canada, duo milia filiorum tuorum misisti. 22  
Vos, Coloniae Australienses, cum Nova Zelanda et  
Tasmania octo milia misistis. Tu, Terra Natalis,  
quae filia Britanniae natu minima es, quinque 25  
milia dedisti. Quam vera sunt verba Horatii ! 26

Caelum non animum mutant qui trans mare currunt. 27

Et in Britannia ipsa magna multitudo voluntari-  
orum nomina sua dederunt. Deus salvam praestet 29  
Reginam ! ”

## XVII. Post tenebras lux.

[Present Subjunctive of *sum* and First Conjugation.]

50. Initium est novi anni. Batavos piget  
Castra Mariana iam duos menses obsidere ; nostros  
quoque obsideri piget. Hostes igitur operam dant  
ut oppidum vi expugnant, et diem constituant quo  
impetum in Caesaris Castra dent, quae ad meridiem  
oppidi iacent. De qua re patruus meus haec

recitavit :—“ Silentio noctis pedibusque nudis  
 collem ascendere incipiunt. Sed Mancunienses  
 nostri ad arma volant. Ad decimam horam diei  
<sup>10</sup> pugnatur, quo tempore tantus imber cadit, ut sol  
<sup>11</sup> nebulis obscuretur. Tum impetum tam acrem in  
<sup>12</sup> Batavos faciunt ut eos propulsent et castra salva  
<sup>13</sup> praestent. Pulcherrimum erat facinus. Sed in  
 oppido summa inopia est, ut litterae, quae per  
 columbas mittuntur, nuntiant. Cibus carissimus  
 est ; nulli iam boves, nullae oves, nulli porci in  
<sup>17</sup> oppido sunt. Carne equina vicitant. Multi  
<sup>18</sup> homines aegrotant ; sed ubi nullae vaccae sunt, lac  
<sup>19</sup> deest. Gallinae denariis viginti constant, duo-  
 decim ova triginta denariis, cetera grandi pretio.  
 Navis aëria nonnumquam ex oppido emittitur, ut  
<sup>22</sup> quae apud hostes aguntur explorentur. Ex qua



nostri feminas Batavas cum festo ornatu nonnumquam vident, quae via ferrata apportantur, ut obsidionem spectent.” Navis aëria ita facta est <sup>25</sup> ut ad terram applicetur, si necesse sit. Nam cum <sup>26</sup> aëre plena est, in caelum ascendit ; cum aér emit-titur, descendit.

### XVIII. Adamantopolis obsidione liberata.

† 51. *Die septimo decimo mensis Februarii scriptum.*

Magnum hodie gaudium per totam Britan-niam est. Nam Adamantopolis obsidione liberata est ! Imperator novus vincere scit. Initio mensis Februarii Caledones emittit, qui ab oriente im-petum in Batavos dent ; interea quinque milibus equitum Anglorum et Australiensium imperat, ut ab occidente ad oppidum obsessum equitent. Itaque, dum Batavus cum Caledonibus proelium committit, equites noctu iter incipiunt. Per tres dies calorem solis et pulverem tolerant ; multi viri et equi calore et labore interficiuntur. Tandem die quinto decimo mensis Februarii incolae oppidi pulverem solito densiorem in campis latis et apertis conspiciunt. Equites ad oppidum appropinquant. Sed vestimenta eorum incolis oppidi ignota erant. Itaque ei qui in statione ante oppidum erant “Salvi sitis !” inquiunt ; “sed qui estis ? unde venitis ?” Et equites “Ex Australia venimus” inquiunt “ut oppidum vestrum obsidione liber-<sup>13</sup> emus ” ‘ Deo sit gratia ” inquiunt illi ; “nam <sup>14</sup> obsidionem iam per tres menses toleravimus.”— Omen est in illo nomine Adamantopolis. Nam <sup>22</sup> ‘ adamanta movere ’ proverbium est. <sup>23</sup>

[Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of other Conjugations.]

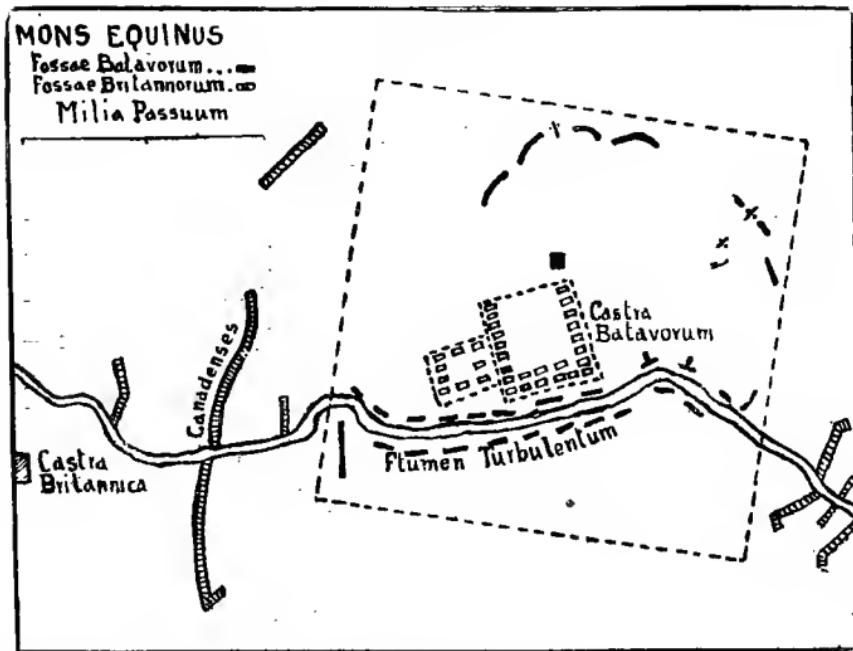
52. AMITA ANTONIO SUO MULTAM SALUTEM DICIT.

S.V.B.E.E.V. Litterae tuae me magnopere  
 2 delectaverunt. De Adamantopoli obsidione liberata  
 nos quoque gaudio triumphamus. In imperatore  
 4 nulla est mora. Num acta diurna legis? Noster  
 5 quinque et viginti milia virorum emisit, qui Bata-  
 6 vum a meridiana parte oppugnant, dum equites illi  
 qui Adamantopolim obsidione liberaverunt eum a  
 8 septentrionibus itinere prohibeant. Sed videat  
 9 imperator noster ne quid detrimenti respublica  
 10 capiat! Animo anxia sum. Nam dies ille Maiu-  
 bensis appropinquat, quo abhinc annos undeviginti  
 coloni illi Batavi exercitum Britannicum vicerunt.  
 Dies erat septimus et vicesimus mensis Februarii.  
 14 Deus omen avertat! Deus prohibeat ne hic dies  
 15 nobis iterum ater sit! Det ut hoc anno nos  
 16 hostes vincamus! Patruus tuus rogat ut tibi suis  
 17 verbis salutem dicam. Tu cura ut valeas. Haec  
 ego die vicesimo mensis Februarii scripsi.

### XIX. Dies Maiubensis.

[Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *sum*.]

53. Kalendae sunt hodie Martiae. Victoria per  
 totum imperium Britannicum conclamat! Nam  
 duas magnas victorias a Batavis reportavimus.  
 4 In finibus Orangiae noster venit, vidit, vicit. Bata-  
 vus castra sua ad Montem Equinum moverat, ubi in  
 ripis Fluminis Turbulenti fossas cuniculosque more  
 7 suo foderat, in quibus sui tunici essent. Ibi noster  
 8 eum velut indagine circumdedit, ne evadere posset.



Batavi se per decem dies fortissime defenderunt, sed frusta. Nostri quoque fossas contra fossas Batavorum foderunt; has ita cotidie propius moverunt, <sup>11</sup> ut tandem septingentos tantum passus a fossis Batavorum abessent. Postremo duae centuriae Canadensium noctu etiam propius appropinquaverunt, <sup>13</sup> et ibi novas fossas foderunt. Tum Batavus salutem <sup>15</sup> desperavit, et postridie se cum toto exercitu suo dedidit. Dies erat Maiubensis. Quattuor milia <sup>17</sup> captivorum in Coloniam missi sunt. Regina nostra <sup>18</sup> populo Canadensi litteras misit, in quibus admirationem tantae virtutis significat, et mortem tot virorum fortium deplorat. De imperatore nostro Marcus hunc versum scripsit:

Unus homo nobis properando restituit rem.

[Past Imperfect Subjunctive of First, Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations.]

54. Altera victoria eius diei in Terra Natali  
 2 reportata est, ubi Fabius ille noster operam  
 3 dabat ut Castra Mariana obsidione liberaret. Bis  
 4 iam flumen Tugelam traiecerat, ut hostes loco mov-  
 5 eret et viam ad oppidum ob sessum faceret. Sed bis  
 6 coactus erat ut suos reduceret. De quibus ex-  
 7 peditionibus patruus meus ad me haec scripsit :—  
 “ Via trans montes tam altos et difficiles ducebat,  
 8 ut pauci multos itinere facile prohiberent. Sed  
 9 nostri per tres menses tantam virtutem pre-  
 stiterunt, ut calorem, pruinam, imbrem, inopiam,  
 11 vulnera, mortem aequo atque hilario animo toler-  
 12 arent, montes altissimos ascenderent, loca inquis-  
 13 sima caperent, omnem vim et impetum belli sus-  
 14 tinerent. Haec facilia ex difficillimis magnitudo  
 15 animi reddidit; ut omnes homines de tanta forti-  
 16 tudine cum admiratione audirent, iudicarentque  
 17 nullos milites umquam fortius sanguinem suum  
 18 pro patria profudisse. Et quamquam ter frustra  
 19 contenderant, ut hostes ex illis montibus pellerent,  
 20 tamen audacia vere Britannica constituerunt ut  
 21 etiam atque etiam pugnarent, donec vincerent.”

† 55. Et vicerunt. Nam postquam die altero  
 et vicesimo mensis Februarii legio Hibernica flumen  
 ab oriente traiecit, ut collem Petreium, in quo  
 Batavi stabant, caperet, die septimo et vicesimo  
 totus exercitus Britannicus traiecit et cum Batavis  
 proelium commisit. Tam acriter pugnatum est ut  
 ex nostris mille sescenti viri amitterentur. Tandem

sub noctem colles illos omnes cepimus et hostes in fugam coniecimus. Postero die manus equitum Britannicorum in oppidum, iam quattuor menses obsessum, equitavit. Magnum erat gaudium et obsessorum et eorum qui oppidum obsidione liberaverant. Et maius fortasse est gaudium totius imperii Britannici. O diem pulchrum, quo <sup>14</sup> per virtutem militum nostrorum et oppido illi obsesso et patriae nova lux affulsit! Nobis pueris <sup>15</sup> propter duas illas victorias dies feriatus datus est, quo scholis liberi essemus. Noctu schola nostra <sup>16</sup> ignibus festis illustrata est; et magistri et pueri insignia triumphalia in memoriam Montis Equini et Castrorum Marianorum fabricata gerebant. <sup>21</sup>

## XX. Pax Britannica.

### † 56. PATER FILIO SUO CARISSIMO SALUTEM.

Hodie, mi fili, tibi longas litteras scribere in animo habeo. Plus quam tres menses sunt ex quo <sup>2</sup> exercitus Batavus ad Montem Equinum captus est, et copiae nostrae victrices Florifontium, caput Orangiae, intraverunt. Nunc vexillum Britannicum Praetoriae, in ipso capite Reipublicae <sup>6</sup> Africanae, salutavimus. Vos, qui in Britannia <sup>7</sup> habitatis, gaudere scio. Sed quanto gaudio nos, qui per tot annos hunc diem exspectavimus, <sup>8</sup> triumphare putatis? Narrabo tibi: abhinc annos undeviginti, post cladem illam Maiubensem, Britanni, qui Praetoriae habitabant, vexillum Britannicum velut mortuum humaverunt. In monumento inscriptum est 'In memoriam vexilli Britannici carissimi, quod anno mill-simo octin-

gentesimo octogesimo primo vita decessit, quatuor annos natum. Resurgam.' Resurrexit. Hodie omnia plena sunt laetitiae. Statio illa Bechuanarum, quae per septem menses obsidionem tanta fortitudine, animo tam hilario sus*21*tinuerat, obsidione liberata est. Tibi, dux fortissime, qui oppidum prospere defendisti, gratias*22*agimus maximas. Bene vertat, quod agas ! Floreat Domus Carthusiana, in qua educatus es !

Sed eos quoque memoria teneamus, qui pro*23*patria pugnantes vitam exspiraverunt. Solum Africanum Britanniae et coloniarum Britannicarum commune sepulchrum est. Monumentum in memoriam filii imperatoris nostri ad Tugelam factum nuper vidi : in quo haec verba sunt—

## IN MEMORIAM

FREDERICI HUGONIS SHERSTON ROBERTS

QUI DIE XVIII ANTE KAL. IAN. A. S. MDCCXCIX VULNUS MORTIFERUM ACCEPIT

DUM FACINUS EGREGIUM ET AUDAX FACIT

PROPTER QUOD CRUCIS VICTORIANAE DECUS MERUIT.

37 AD TUGELAM POSTRIDIE EXSPIRAVIT.



Vita eius brevis sed non imperfecta fuit. Nam*38* quid pulchrius est quam pro patria pugnantem vitam exspirare ? Tu, mi fili, exemplum tantae virtutis memoria tene. Ab his et huiusmodi viris

imperium Britanicum conditum est et conservabitur. Floreat Etona, ubi adulescens ille fortissimus educatus est !

Quid est imperium Britanicum ? Societas populum et nationum, quae communione beneficiorum officiorumque continetur. Bella enim pro sociis coloniisque sumuntur et geruntur ; coloniae pro Britannia, communi omnium Britannorum parente, sanguinem suum profundere paratae sunt. Nam principatus Britannicus imperium et libertatem, res quondam inter se contrarias, consociat. Itaque illud patrocinium orbis terrarum verius quam imperium nominari oportet. Videamus, mi fili, ne, ut maioribus nostris pulcherrimum fuit tantam nobis gloriam imperii tradere, sic nobis turpissimum sit id quod accepimus obtinere et conservare non posse. Illud vero imperii nostri firmissimum fundamentum est quod victos in civitatem admittere possumus. Ianua nostra omnibus aperta est. Batavis, igitur, sicut aliis populis victis, civibus Britannicis esse licet. Ex hostibus socii aliquando fuerint, ut speramus ; quo tempore han<sup>c</sup> sibi quisque maximam laudem iudicabit, ut de se dicere possit ‘Civis Britannicus sum,’ et de Britannia—

Fecisti patriam diversis gentibus unam !

67

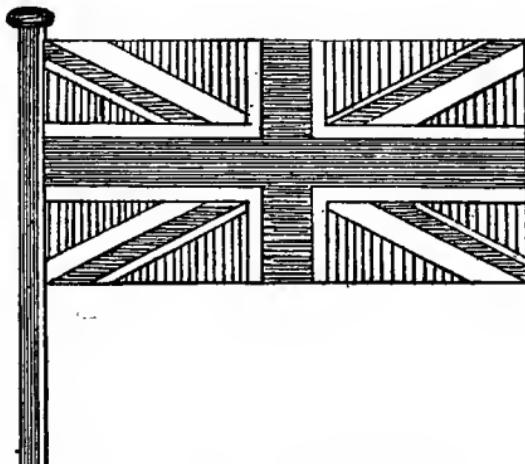
Nam quae Claudianus, poeta Romanus, de urbe Roma scripsit, ea etiam verius de Britannia dicere licet :—

70 Haec est, in gremium victos quae sola recepit,  
 Humanumque genus communi nomine fovit.  
 73 Matris non dominae ritu; civesque vocavit  
 Quos domuit, nexuque pio longinqua revinxit.  
 74 Huius pacificis debemus moribus omnes  
 75 Quod cuncti gens una sumus.

76 Nos, igitur, hodie, sicut olim Camillus ille  
 Romanus, templum Concordiae consecremus, in  
 78 quo haec verba inscribantur : PACI ET LIBERTATI  
 RESTITUTAE.

80 Bellavinius; esto.  
 Sed cecidere odia, et tristes mors obruit iras.

Tu vero, fili mi carissime, bene vale, et me  
 ama. Scripsi Nonis Iuniis, Anno Salutis MDCCCC.



## PREPARATIONS.

**NOTE TO THE TEACHER.**—The following “Preparations” are not intended to do the work of a vocabulary : they are of the nature of outline lessons on grammatical points, and therefore contain only (1) words presenting some new grammatical feature not previously studied, (2) constructions or phrases which call for special notice. In this respect these Preparations differ from those given in *Ora Maritima*. The pupil is now supposed to be capable of looking out unknown words in the Alphabetical Vocabulary (pp. 149–175).

In connexion with each new grammatical feature introduced, the necessary grammatical rules and tables are given ; so that the pupil using this book has no need of a separate grammar.

The amount of grammar assumed as known at the start is that contained in *Ora Maritima*, viz., the first three Declensions of Nouns, Adjectives of similar formation (except those in —, *is*, *e* of the 3rd Declension), all the tenses of the Indicative Active of the 1st Conjugation and of the verb *sum*, and a few isolated forms of Pronouns (*me*, *mihi* ; *te*, *tibi* ; *se*, *sibi* ; *nos*, *nobis* ; *vos*, *vobis*).

**ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF WORDS.**—If the last syllable but one of a word of more than two syllables is *long*, it is also accented (thus : *remōtus*) ; if *short*, the accent is thrown back on to the last syllable but two (thus : *rémövet*, *rémövēt*). Words of only two syllables are always accented on the first of the two (thus : *vīrēs*, *vīrum*). Very few Latin words are accented on the last syllable. The only one that occurs in this book is *adhūc*. This and similar words have lost a syllable, which explains the accentuation : *adhūc* stands for *adhū-ce*.

Syllables ending in two or more consonants are mostly long, as in *aperta*, *fenestra* ; so too are syllables containing a double vowel, as in *nautae*. But many syllables ending in a single consonant and containing a single vowel are also long, because the vowel is itself a *long vowel* : all such long vowels are marked in the following Preparations. Thus *beata* and *antiqua* have the middle vowel long, and will therefore be marked *beāta*, *antīqua* : and it is because the middle syllable in each of these words has a long vowel in it that it is accented (*beāta*, *antīqua*). Vowels which do not bear any mark in the following Preparations may be regarded as short, as in *domina*, *amita*, *casa*, *quoque*, *mea*, *tua* (accented *dómīna*, *ámīta*, *cása*, *quóque*, *méa*, *túa*).

1. The words printed black are the grammatically important words—here Adjectives of the 3rd Decl. in —, *is*, *e.*

1. *Septembrēs*, 'September,' an Adjective agreeing with *Kalendae* and meaning 'seventh' or 'belonging-to-the-seventh month.' The Roman year originally began with March; hence September was then the seventh month. The literal translation of this sentence is 'To-day there are the September Calends,' = 'to-day is the 1st of September.'

3. *mensis Septembris*, 'of the September month' = 'of the month of S.'

7. *celebris*, 'celebrated,' agreeing with *ducis*. *Ducis* is Genitive, because it depends on *dē vitā*, just as *Agricolae* does; the meaning is 'about the life of Agricola, the life of the celebrated general.' A Noun standing in the same construction as another Noun to which it is adjectival is said to be 'in apposition' to it: thus *ducis* is here in apposition to *Agricolae*. But in English we should say, 'about the life of Agricola, the celebrated general,' without a second 'of.'

11. *alaci*, 'eager,' agreeing with *animō*. The Abl. without a Preposition here means 'with,' as in *magnā audāciā pugnābant*; see O.M.\* p. 143.

It will be seen that Adjectives like *September*, *October*, *November*, *December*, *eleber*, *alacer* differ from Adjectives like *fortis* in having a separate form for the Masculine Nominative Singular. This case is formed without the ending *-is*, and therefore resembles a Noun like *imber*, *rain* (stem *imbr-*).

*eleber, celebris, celebre, celebrated.*

|             | SINGULAR.                       |                 |                | PLURAL.                  |                  |                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Masc.</i>                    | <i>Fem.</i>     | <i>Neut.</i>   | <i>Masc. and Fem.</i>    | <i>Neut.</i>     |                   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>celeber celebris celebre</i> |                 |                | <i>celebrēs celebria</i> |                  |                   |
| <i>Gen.</i> |                                 | <i>celebris</i> |                |                          | <i>celebrium</i> |                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> |                                 |                 | <i>celebri</i> |                          |                  | <i>celebribus</i> |
| <i>Abt.</i> |                                 |                 |                |                          |                  |                   |

2. [*is, ea, id*, Singular Number.]

1. *post-quam*, lit. 'after than' or 'later than' = 'after the time when' or simply 'when,' or 'after.' But it must be distinguished from the Preposition *post*, 'after'; cp. *post prandium*, p. 3.

\* The letters O.M. stand for *Ora Maritima* throughout these Preparations.

2. *pedestrēs* and *equestrēs*, from adjectives in —, *is*, *e*.
8. *id*, 'that-thing,' 'that.'      *ei*, 'for that man,' 'for him.'
9. *nōn rēvērā dēbellāverat*. The so-called 'Conquest of Britain' by Julius Caesar ought rather to be called 'The failure of Caesar to conquer Britain.' Britain was not conquered till nearly 100 years later.
10. *ēius*, 'of that-man,' 'of him,' 'his.'      *eum*, 'that-man,' 'him,' Accusative Case; *reportāv-isse*, Infinitive formed from the Perfect tense *reportāv-i* (the Perfect of *reportō*, 1st Conj.); the literal translation is 'Tacitus declares him not to have won a great victory.' This construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive (*eum reportāvisse*) depending on a verb of 'declaring' or 'thinking' is found in English as well as in Latin; but English generally prefers to use 'that' followed by a Nominative and a Verb: thus, 'Tacitus affirms (or says) that he did not win a great victory.' Cp. O.M. § 36, *Britanniam esse insulam iūdicābant*, 'they judged Britain to be an island.'
14. *virī animō fortī*, 'men with brave mind' = 'men of brave mind'; cp. O.M. § 43, *virī membrīs rōbustīs, flāvīs capillīs, oculīs caeruleīs*. The Ablative without a Preposition here denotes a quality of the person spoken of, and may therefore be called an Ablative of Quality or Adjectival Ablative.
16. *C*. here stands for *Gāi* (as though it were a *G*).—The coin of Caesar here shown has a head of Venus on one side and on the other the figure of Aeneas carrying Anchises from Troy. Caesar traced his descent from Venus and Anchises.
19. *ēius*, 'of that,' agreeing with *belli*.
20. *ei*, 'to that-man,' 'to him.'      *Britannia nōn cūrāe erat*, 'Britain was not a care': *cūrāe* is Dative, lit. 'for a care' = 'a cause of anxiety.'
22. *dē eā intrāndā*, 'about it to-be-entered' = 'about entering it'; *eā* agrees with *insulā* understood, 'about that-island.' Cp. O.M. § 24, *locus idōneus est ad nāvigia applicānda*, 'for vessels to-be-brought-to-land.'

It will be seen that *is*, *ea*, *id* may be used as an Adjective (= 'that') or as a Pronoun (= 'that-one,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' etc.).

## is, ea, id—SINGULAR NUMBER.

|      | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|------|-------|------|-------|
| Nom. | is    | ea   | id    |
| Acc. | eum   | eam  | id    |
| Gen. |       | ēius |       |
| Dat. |       | ei   |       |
| Abl. | eo    | ea   | eo    |

3. [is, ea, id, Singular and Plural Numbers.]

4. eo<sup>rūm</sup>, 'of those,' agreeing with *rēgūm*.
5. eum, 'that-man,' 'him'; cp. § 2, l. 10.
7. ei, 'to that-man,' 'to him'; cp. § 2, l. 8.
10. eārum, 'of those,' agreeing with *gentium*.
11. in eis, 'on those' (agreeing with *nummīs* understood), on them.'
12. ēius, 'of that,' agreeing with *nōminis*.—On the first coin shown on p. 5, CUNO =Cunobelinus and CAMU =Camulodunum.
13. ēius, 'of that-man,' 'of him,' 'his'; cp. § 2, l. 10. Translate 'of his father Tasciovanus.' (See name on second coin).
15. eo<sup>tempore</sup> (Abl.) . . . cum, 'at that time when,' 'at the time when.' The Ablative without a Preposition here denotes Time when, as in O.M. § 10, secundō saeculō 'in the second century.' The English Preposition to be used in translating such an Ablative is 'at' or 'in' or 'on' (as in 'on the 5th day').
17. ei, 'those' (agreeing with *principēs* understood) 'those-men,' 'they.' Note that the Nominative Case of this Pronoun, whether Singular or Plural, is not used in Latin except when there is some emphasis on the word; in the present sentence the translation 'they' requires some emphasis in English. Where no emphasis is required, the Nominative of a Pronoun meaning 'he,' 'she,' 'it' or 'they' is omitted altogether in Latin, as in § 1, l. 17, saepe nōs vīsitant, 'they often visit us.'
19. prae-erant imperiō Rōmānō (Dat.), 'were-in-command to (-of) the Roman empire.'
20. mortī datus, 'put to death'; dare = 'to put'; see Vocab.
23. Caractacus (whom Tacitus more correctly calls *Caratacus*) and Togodumnus succeeded to their father's throne shortly before

the invasion of Britain by Claudius in A.D. 43. Togodumnus met his death in one of the battles fought in that year.

is, ea, id—PLURAL NUMBER.

|               | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i>   | eī           | eae         | ea           |
| <i>Acc.</i>   | eōs          | eās         | ea           |
| <i>Gen.</i>   | eōrum        | eārum       | eōrum        |
| <i>Dat.</i> } |              |             | eīs          |
| <i>Abl.</i> } |              |             |              |

† 4. 1. *is*, ‘that-man,’ ‘he’ (emphatic), referring to *Cunobelinus*.

5. *ēius*, ‘of that,’ agreeing with *aetatis*.

6. *ēius*, ‘of that’ (agreeing with *insulae* understood), ‘of it,’ ‘its.’      *eōs*, ‘those (inhabitants),’ ‘those-men,’ ‘them.’

11. *eīs*, ‘to those-men,’ ‘to them.’

14. *eōrum*, ‘of those-men,’ ‘of them,’ ‘their.’

† 5. [*ēius*, *eōrum*, *eārum*, contrasted with *suus*, *a*, *um*.]

3. *ēius*, ‘of that-man,’ ‘his,’ referring to Claudius, who is mentioned in the previous sentence.

6. *suīs*, ‘his,’ agreeing with *ducibus*, and referring to Claudius, who is spoken of in this sentence : for *mandāvit*, ‘he entrusted,’ means ‘Claudius entrusted.’

8. *eae*, ‘those’ = ‘those forces,’ ‘they,’ with emphasis.

9. *oppidum Camulodūnum*, ‘the town Colchester,’ or, as we generally say, ‘the town of Colchester.’ This ‘of’ after ‘town’ is peculiar in English : we do not say ‘the river of Thames.’ In all such phrases Latin makes the Name agree in Case with the word for ‘town,’ ‘river,’ ‘mountain,’ etc. Thus *flūmen Tamesa* (§ 2), *flūmen Tamesam* (Accusative), *flūminis Tamesae* (Genitive) etc.

11. *ea*, ‘that,’ agreeing with *urbs* understood ; ‘that-city was the first Roman city in Britain.’ The settlement (*colōnia*) of Roman soldiers was established at Colchester about A.D. 50 ; and after this the town was called a ‘colony.’

13. *reportātam*, 'won,' an Adjective formed from the Verb *reportō*, 'I win,' and agreeing with *victōriam*. Note the Latin order of words ('from the Britons won' = 'won from the Britons'). Similarly in English we may say "an exercise, *neally written*, was handed in by me"; the Adjective 'written' being formed from the Verb 'I write.' *suō*, 'his' or 'his-own,' agreeing with *filiō*, and referring to *princeps Rōmānus*.

*nōmen Britannicō*, 'the name Britannicus'; but *Britannicō* does not agree with *nōmen* in Case; it is a Dative, and agrees with *filiō-suō*, so that the literal translation is 'gave the name to his son, to Britannicus': cp. § 1, l. 7 (*ducis*).

14. *ēius*, 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to *princeps Rōmānus* in the previous sentence.

16. *sē*, 'themselves,' referring to the Britons ('they').

19. After the destruction of his dominion in the Eastern part of Britain in A.D. 43 Caractacus withdrew into Wales, where he gained many successes against the Romans.

20. *ēius*, 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to *Caractacus* in the previous sentence.

22. *Virocōniī*, 'at Viroconium (Wroxeter)'; *Dēvae*, 'at Deva (Chester)'; *Iscae*, 'at Isca (Caerleon).' These Cases denoting 'at' are called **Locative Cases**; they are found chiefly in Names of Towns, which accordingly have one more Case than other Nouns. But the Locative is always the same in form as one of the other Cases; in the 1st and 2nd Declensions, Singular Number, it is the same in form as the Genitive. Note that there is no Preposition used to express 'at' before the Name of a Town.

25. *eōrum*, 'of those-men,' 'their,' referring to *Silurēs* in the previous sentence.

26. *Rōmam*, 'to Rome.' The Accusative of the Name of a Town without a Preposition is used to express 'to'; so in O.M. § 24, *Dubrās*, 'to Dover.' 'To Wroxeter' would be *Virocōniūm*; 'to Chester,' *Dēvam*; 'to Caerleon,' *Iscam*.

The words *ēius* and *eōrum*, *eārum* are Genitive Cases of *is*, *ea*, *id*, and therefore mean properly 'of that-person' or 'of that-thing'; plural, 'of those-persons' or 'of those-things.' Hence they generally refer to some person or thing mentioned in a previous sentence. The Adjective *suus*, *a*, *um*, on the other hand, means properly 'his own,' or 'her own,' or 'its own,' or 'their own.' Hence it naturally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence; for we do not often say

'his own' when we are referring to a person or thing mentioned in a different sentence. For instance, we may say 'Claudius gave this name to *his own son*', but not 'Claudius was the emperor of Rome. And the Romans gave this name to *his own son*'.—The person or thing referred to by *suis, a, um* generally stands in the Nominative Case, but not always: for instance, we may say 'I will visit him in *his own house*' (*domī suae eum visitābō*, where *suae* refers to the Accusative *eum*) ; 'give to each man *his own*' (*suūm cūīque dā*, where *suūm* refers to the Dative *cūīque*).

#### 6. [ipse, ipsa, ipsum, Singular and Plural.]

4. *ipsum*, 'himself,' agreeing with *rēgem*. *rēgem spectandī*, 'of seeing the King'; cp. O.M § 28, *Rōmānī cupidī erant insulam nostram vīstantī et explōrandī*, 'of visiting and exploring our island': *spectandī* is the Genitive of a Noun in *-ndum*, formed from the Verb *spectō*. These Nouns in *-ndum* are like the English Nouns in *-ing*, which are formed from Verbs ('seeing,' 'visiting').

7. *ipsō*, 'himself,' agreeing with *Caractacō*.

8. *ēius*, 'of that man,' 'of him,' 'his,' ; *ēius*, not *suīs*, is used here, though it refers to *Caractacō* in the same sentence, because *suīs* would naturally refer to *multitūdō*, and this would make nonsense ('their own wife and brothers'). *in catēnīs*, 'in chains' = 'chained.' [So in Livy, xlvi. 40. 6.]

9. *ipse*, 'himself,' agreeing with *Caractacus*.

11. *ipsius* agrees with *principis*. *collocātus . . . inquit*, 'placed before the eyes of the Emperor himself, he said' = 'he, placed before the eyes of the Emperor himself, said.' The Adjective *collocātus* agrees with 'he' in *inquit*, which might have been expressed by a separate word (*Is, ante oculōs . . . collocātus, inquit*). Compare in English "Driven out of its course by adverse winds, the ship was cast ashore" = "The ship, driven . . . winds, was cast ashore." The only difference is that the order of words in Latin would be "The ship, *out of its course by adverse winds driven*, was cast ashore."

14, 15. *tōtī orbī terrārum imperitandī*, 'of giving orders to (= of holding sway over) the whole world'; *imperitandī* is the Genitive of a Noun in *-ndum* formed from the Verb *imperitō*: *tōtī orbī* is Dative, depending on *imperitandī*. The Adjective *tōtūs, a, um* is declined like other Adjectives in *-us, a, um*, except in the Gen. Sing. *tōt-iūs* and the Dat. Sing. *tōt-i*. These forms are the same for all three Genders, like *ips-iūs, ips-i*.

19. *ipsī*, 'himself,' agreeing with *Caractacō*,

It will be seen that the word *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum* is used like the English word ‘-self’ in ‘my-self,’ ‘thy-self,’ ‘him-self,’ ‘her-self,’ ‘it-self’ ; and in the Plural like ‘-selves’ (our-selves, yourselves, them-selves). It is generally an Adjective, but may also be a Pronoun.

*ipse, ipsa, ipsum, ‘-self.’*

|             | SINGULAR.    |               |              | PLURAL.        |                |                |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
|             | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i>   | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i>   | <i>Fem.</i>    | <i>Neut.</i>   |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>ipse</i>  | <i>ipsa</i>   | <i>ipsum</i> | <i>ipsi</i>    | <i>ipsae</i>   | <i>ipsa</i>    |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>ipsum</i> | <i>ipsam</i>  |              | <i>ipsos</i>   | <i>ipsas</i>   | <i>ipsa</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> |              | <i>ipsius</i> |              | <i>ipsorum</i> | <i>ipsarum</i> | <i>ipsorum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> |              | <i>ipsi</i>   |              | <i>ipsis</i>   |                |                |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>ipsō</i>  | <i>ipsā</i>   | <i>ipsō</i>  |                |                |                |

7. [ille, illa, illud (declined at end of § 8).]

4. *ille*, ‘that-man,’ ‘he,’ referring to Suetonius (l. 2, ‘the former’), not to Nero (l. 3). The Nominative Case always has some emphasis ; cp. I. 7.

10. *illam*, ‘that,’ agreeing with *colōniam*. III, ‘those,’ agreeing with *veterāni*.

16. *illa*, ‘those,’ agreeing with *aedificia*. Here *illa* comes before its Noun, which is its usual position, except when an Adjective or another Noun is added to the phrase, as in *veterāni illi Rōmāni* and *colōniam illam Camulodūnum*; in such cases it comes between the Noun and the other word.

18. *illō*, ‘that,’ agreeing with *templō*.

8. 1. *illa*, ‘that’ or ‘the,’ agreeing with *rēgina*.

5. *illis*, ‘for those-men,’ ‘for them,’ referring to the Romans, who are in her mind ; Dative Case.

11. *Illōs*, ‘those-men,’ ‘them’ ; put at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis ; so, too, *nōs* (l. 12), which is made still more emphatic by being repeated : ‘us our country and homes, us freedom calls to arms.’

14. *illud*, ‘that,’ agreeing with *simulācrum*.

17, 18. In Cowper’s poem the Druid says to Boadicea—

‘Regions Caesar never knew  
Thy posterity shall sway.’

19. *illius*, 'of that,' agreeing with *deī*. Cp. *ipsius*, *ēius*.

20. *illud*, 'that,' agreeing with *consilium* understood: 'that (counsel) is the counsel of a woman.' Cp. on § 5, l. 11.

21. *num . . . eritis*, 'will you men be less brave?' *Num* is a word that turns a statement into a question. The only English word by which it can be translated is 'whether.' But this use of 'whether' is old-fashioned, and no word is necessary in English for *num*.

It will be seen that *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, like *is*, *ea*, *id*, may be used either as an Adjective (= 'that') or as a Pronoun (= 'that-one', 'he', 'she', 'it', etc.).

*ille, illa, illud, 'that,' 'that-one.'*

|             | SINGULAR.    |               |              | PLURAL.        |                |                |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
|             | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i>   | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Masc.</i>   | <i>Fem.</i>    | <i>Neut.</i>   |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>ille</i>  | <i>illa</i>   | <i>illud</i> | <i>illi</i>    | <i>illae</i>   | <i>illa</i>    |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>illum</i> | <i>illam</i>  | <i>illud</i> | <i>illōs</i>   | <i>illās</i>   | <i>illa</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> |              | <i>illius</i> |              | <i>illōrum</i> | <i>illārum</i> | <i>illōrum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> |              | <i>illī</i>   |              |                |                |                |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>illō</i>  | <i>illā</i>   | <i>illō</i>  | }              |                |                |
|             |              |               |              | <i>illis</i>   |                |                |

† 9. 4. *ex insulā Mōnā*; cp. on § 5, l. 9, *oppidum Camulodūnum*.

7. *iam tum*, 'already then' = 'even then.' *cōpiā mercātōrum celebre*, 'crowded with a multitude of merchants'; cp. O.M. § 15, *crēber pueris et puellis*.

11, 12. *Milia* (Plur.) takes the Gen. (*Rōmānōrum*); cp. l. 21.

13. *suōs*, 'his men,' 'his own men,' = *suōs virōs*. *sē parābat*, 'was preparing himself.' *ad*, 'for.'

16. *paucī illī Rōmānī*, 'those few Romans'; cp. on § 7, l. 16.

22. *proelii spectandī causā*, 'for the sake of seeing the battle,' lit. 'for the sake of the battle to-be-seen'; cp. on § 2, l. 22.

23. *ipsa sē*, 'herself . . . herself'; *ipsa* agrees with *Boadicea*.

10. [*hic*, *haec*, *hōc* (declined at end of § 12).]

1. *Hic*, 'this,' agreeing with *fīnis* understood; cp. on § 5, l. 11.

6. *nōnī principis*, in apposition to *Vespasiānī*; cp. on § 1, l. 7.

10. *Hūius*, 'of this,' agreeing with *virī clāri*.

11. *Hunc*, 'this,' agreeing with *virum*.

11. 1. *prīmō annō*, like *eō tempore*, § 3, l. 15.

3. *hanc*, 'this,' agreeing with *gentem*. *fere tōtam*, 'almost whole'; translate 'almost the whole of this tribe.'

7. *Hi*, 'these-men' or 'the latter': contrast *ille, illa, illud*, 'the former,' § 7, l. 4. *perītī natandī*. The Adjective *peritus*, 'skilled,' takes a Genitive (Engl. 'skilled in'); O.M. § 15, *lūdōrum peritus*.

10. *haec*, 'this' or 'the latter,' agreeing with *classis* understood.

11-14. *ipse penetrat*, 'he himself (=Agricola) penetrates.'

15. *velut in alteram insulam*, 'as (or as it were) into a second island', cp. O.M. § 8, *noctū pharōs spectāmus, velut stellās clārās in oceānō*.

18. *Graupius*, the proper form of the word 'Grampian,' which latter has come from a misprint in the earliest printed edition of the Agricola of Tacitus, published in the 15th century. But for this we should have said 'My name is Norval; on the *Graupian Hills*,' etc.

20. *his*, 'with these' (=the following), agreeing with *verbīs*.

12. 1. *haec*, 'this,' agreeing with *pugna*.

2. *tōtī Britanniae*, 'to the whole of Britain'; cp. § 11, l. 3.

3, 4. *Hi*, 'these,' agreeing with *montēs* (masc.); *hae*, 'these,' agreeing with *silvae* (tem.); *haec*, 'these,' agreeing with *maria* (neut.).

5. *hunc*, 'this,' agreeing with *angulum*.

7. *nē mare quidem*, 'not even the sea.' Note *nē* instead of *nōn*, and the position of *mare* between *nē* and *quidem*.

9. *hanc*, 'this,' agreeing with *insulam*.

12. *vestrōs* is masculine because it belongs to both the words *liberōs* and *uxorēs*, which together =*hominēs*, 'human beings'; and *homō* is always masc. in Latin.

13. *vastāverint*, Fut. Perf.; 'when they shall have laid waste.'

15. *haec*, 'this,' agreeing with *Calēdonia*: 'this Caledonia of ours.'

**hic, haec, hoc, 'this,' 'this one.'**

|      | SINGULAR |       |       | PLURAL. |      |       |
|------|----------|-------|-------|---------|------|-------|
|      | Masc.    | Fem.  | Neut. | Masc.   | Fem. | Neut. |
| Nom. | hi-c     | hae-c | hō-c  | hi-     | hae  | hae-c |
| Acc. | hun-c    | han-c | hō-c  | hōs     | hās  | hae-c |
| Gen. |          | hūius |       | hōrum   |      |       |
| Dat. |          | hui-c |       | hārum   |      |       |
| Abl. | hō-c     | hā-c  | hō-c  | hōrum   |      |       |
|      |          |       |       | his     |      |       |

The *c* which is printed after the hyphen is an addition which is made to the word, but only in certain Cases. If you take off the *c*, the rest of these Cases look more like Cases of other Pronouns (*ille, illum, illius, illī, illō*). The *c* means 'here,' like the French *ci* in *celui ci*; thus *hi-c* = 'this here.'

The Dative Singular is to be pronounced as one syllable.

- † 13. 1. *in hunc modum*, 'in the following way' ; for *hōc modō*.
- 5. *hī*, 'the latter,' the Caledonians, as also in 1. 14.
- 6. *hominēs ignāvōs*, 'cowardly fellows,' in apposition to *hōs*. *Homō* is sometimes used in a contemptuous sense, but never *vir*.
- 18. *suōs ipsī*, 'themselves their-own' ; cp. *ipsa sē*, § 9, l. 23.

#### 14. [Comparatives of Adjectives.]

- 4. *hūmān-iōr*, 'kind-er,' 'more humane' ; from *hūmān-us*, *a, um*, § 10, l. 14.
- 5. *clément-iōr*, 'more clement,' 'more merciful' ; from *clēmens*, § 10, l. 14.
- 6. *turbulent-iōr*, 'more turbulent' ; from *turbulent-us*, *a, um*, § 10, l. 3.
- 7. *fort-iōr-ēs*, 'brav-er,' agreeing with *hostēs* ; from *fort-is*, *e*, § 2, l. 14.      *audāc-iōr-ēs*, 'bold-er,' from *audax*, § 8, l. 1.
- 9. *iust-iōr-em*, 'just-er,' agreeing with *sē* ; from *iust-us*, *a, um*, § 10, l. 14. Translate 'who showed himself juster?'
- 12. *in-hūmān-iōs*, 'more in-human,' 'un-kinder,' agreeing with *quid*, Neuter.      *saev-iōs*, 'more savage' ; from *saev-us*, *a, um*, § 12, l. 6.

13. *crūdēl-lōr-ēs*, 'more cruel,' agreeing with *hostēs*; from *crūdēl-is*, *e*, § 8, l. 19.

18. *cār-iōr*, 'dear-er'; from *cār-us*, *-a*, *-um*, § 4, L. II.

19. *ācer-iōr-ēs*, 'keen-er,' agreeing with *dēfēnsōrēs*; from *ācer*, *ācr-is*, *e*, § 4, l. 2.

20. *pulchr-iōs*, 'more glorious,' agreeing with *nihil*, Neuter; from *pulchre*, *pulchr-a*, *um*, § 10, l. 13.

21. *miser-iōs*, 'more miserable'; from *miser*, *miser-a*, *um*.

It will be seen that the Comparative of an Adjective, which is formed in English by adding -er or by the use of 'more,' is formed in Latin by adding -ior (or, for the Neuter, -ius) to the part of the Adjective that remains when the ending -us or -is or -s alone of the Nominative Singular Masculine is cut off. Thus :—

|  | WITHOUT THE ENDING. | COMPARATIVE.                            |
|--|---------------------|---|
| <i>cār-us</i> (-a, -um)                | <i>cār-</i>         | <i>cār-iōr</i> , <i>cār-iōs</i>         |
| <i>fort-is</i> (-e)                    | <i>fort-</i>        | <i>fort-iōr</i> , <i>fort-iōs</i>       |
| <i>clēmen-s</i> , for <i>clēment-s</i> | <i>clēment-</i>     | <i>clēment-iōr</i> , <i>clēment-iōs</i> |
| <i>audax</i> , = <i>audāc-s</i>        | <i>audāc-</i>       | <i>audāc-iōr</i> , <i>audāc-iōs</i>     |

When the Nom. Sing. Masc. is formed without any -us or -is, there is nothing to cut off from this Case.\* Thus :—

|  |               |                                     |
|--|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>miser</i> ( <i>miser-a</i> , <i>-um</i> ) | <i>miser-</i> | <i>miser-iōr</i> , <i>miser-iōs</i> |
|--|---------------|-------------------------------------|

But the *e* that comes before the *r* is dropped whenever it is dropped in the Feminine and Neuter (and in the other Cases of the Masculine) of the Adjective itself. Thus :—

|   |                |                                       |
|---|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>pulcher</i> ( <i>pulchr-a</i> , <i>-um</i> ) | <i>pulchr-</i> | <i>pulchr-iōr</i> , <i>pulchr-iōs</i> |
| <i>ācer</i> ( <i>ācr-is</i> , <i>-e</i> )       | <i>ācr-</i>    | <i>ācr-iōr</i> , <i>ācr-iōs</i>       |

The Comparative, therefore, may be found most easily by cutting off the ending of the Feminine, and adding -ior or -ius.

It will be seen also that the Comparative of an Adjective is itself an Adjective; it can be declined (like a Noun of the 3rd Declension, such as *Masc. scriptor*, *Neut. corpus*), and must agree with the Noun to which it belongs. Its Feminine is the same as its Masculine; but its Neuter is different in the Nominative and Accusative Cases.

\* The Nominative Singular Masculine of these Adjectives in *er* has already dropped its ending.

## Declension of Comparatives.

|      | SINGULAR.      |        | PLURAL.        |          |
|------|----------------|--------|----------------|----------|
|      | Masc. and Fem. | Neut.  | Masc. and Fem. | Neut.    |
| Nom. | cāriōr         | cārius | cāriōr-ēs      | cāriōr-a |
| Acc. | cāriōr-em      | cārius | cāriōr-ēs      | cāriōr-a |
| Gen. | cāriōr-is      |        | cāriōr-um      |          |
| Dat. | cāriōr-i       |        | cāriōr-ibus    |          |
| Abl. | cāriōr-e       |        | cāriōr-ibus    |          |

Note that if we want to say 'less dear,' 'less brave,' etc. (which is also a kind of Comparative of 'dear,' 'brave,' etc.) we must use the Adverb *minus*, which means 'less': for instance, *minus cārus*, *minus cāra*, *minus cārum*, 'less dear.'

## 15. [Superlatives of Adjectives.]

2. *saev-issima*, 'the most savage,' agreeing with *bella*; from the Adjective *saev-us*, *a*, *um*.      *inhūmān-issima*, 'the most inhuman'; from *inhūmān-us*, *a*, *um*.

4. *pugnāta*, 'fought,' is an Adjective formed from the Verb *pugnō*, 'I fight,' and agreeing with *bella illa*; the whole phrase *temporibus antiquis contrā gentēs barbarās pugnāta* is like the phrase *ā Britanniis reportātam* in § 5, ll. 12, 13; see note there.

5. *crūdēl-issimī*, 'most cruel' = 'very cruel,' agreeing with *hostēs*; from *crūdēl-is*, *e*.

9. *ūtil-issima*, 'most useful' = 'very useful,' agreeing with *pax*; from *ūtil-is*, *e*.

12. *revocāvit* means here not 'called back,' but 'called off,' 'withdrew.' *optimis*, 'very good,' agreeing with *vīis*; irregular Superlative of *bonus*, *a*, *um*, § 4, l. 1.

13. *pulcher-rimis*, 'very fine,' agreeing with *aedificiis*; from *pulcher*, *pulchr-a*, *um*.      *celeber-rimis*, 'very famous,' from *celeber*, *celebr-is*, *e*, § 1, l. 8.      *templis*, etc., in apposition to *aedificiis*.

18. *fort-issimī*, 'very brave,' agreeing with *dēfensōrēs*; from *fort-is*, *e*.      *ācer-rimī*, 'very keen'; from *ācer*, *acr-is*, *e*.

22. *Callēvae Atrebatum*, 'at Calleva of the Atrebates' = 'at Silchester'; *Callēvae* is the Locative; cp. *Dēvae* and *Iscae*, § 5.

24. *in insulā Vectī*, at Brading; near Sandown. In several of the rooms the floor is covered with mosaics.

27. *mediocriter hūmānae*, 'moderately civilized,' 'pretty civilized.' Contrast with this *hūmanissimus* = 'very civilized.'

It will be seen that the Superlative of an Adjective, which is formed in English by adding -est, or by the use of 'most,' is formed in Latin by adding -issimus, -issima, -issimum to the part of the Adjective that remains when the ending -us or -is or -s alone of the Nominative Singular Masculine is cut off. Thus :—

| WITHOUT THE ENDING.     | SUPERLATIVE.  |
|-------------------------|---|
| cār-us (-a, -um)        | cār- cār-issimus, cār-issima,<br>cār-issimum                    |
| fort-is (-e)            | fort- fort-issimus, fort-issima,<br>fort-issimum                |
| clēmen-s, for clēment-s | clēment- clēment-issimus,<br>clēment-issima,<br>clēment-issimum |

But when the Nom. Sing. Masc. is formed without any -us or -is, the Superlative is formed by doubling the last letter of the Nom. Sing. Masc. and adding -imus, -ima, -imum. Thus we get (with rr)—

| SUPERLATIVE.            |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| miser (miser-a, -um)    | miser-r-imus,<br>miser-r-ima, miser-r-imum       |
| pulcher (pulchr-a, -um) | pulcher-r-imus,<br>pulcher-r-ima, pulcher-r-imum |
| ācer (ācr-is, -e)       | ācer-r-imus, ācer-r-ima, ācer-r-imum             |

Note that the *e* before the *r* of the Nom. Sing. Masc. is *never dropped* to form the Superlative.

Superlatives are declined in the same way as other Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

#### 16. [Passive Voice of 1st Conj.; Present, Past Imperfect, Future (conjugated at end of § 17).]

7. *delectant-ur*, 'they are delighted,' 'they are interested'; Passive of *delectant*, 'they delight,' 'they please.' The word *suae* in l. 6 is emphatic, 'their own'; these two boys are Scots.

8. *laudat-ur*, 'is praised'; Passive of *laudat*, 'praises.' *Nōn-ne* in l. 7 is simply the word *nōn* with -ne tacked on to it to turn the statement into a question; compare O.M. § 19, *nōn-ne in oppidīs habitābant?* 'did not they live in towns?' The word -ne, like *num* (§ 8), need not be translated by any separate word in English.

9. *expugnābant-ur*, 'used to be taken by storm' ; Passive of *expugnābant*. Similarly *vastābant-ur* and *dēbellābant-ur* in l. 10.

Note that the Person *by whom* the action is done is expressed by the Preposition *ā* or *ab* with the Ablative Case ; thus *ā Tacitō* and *ab aliis imperatōribus*.

13. *delecto-r*, 'I am delighted (or pleased)' ; Passive of *dēlectō*.

17. *ornābāt-ur*, 'was being adorned' ; Passive of *ornābat*. *aedificiis Rōmānis*, 'with Roman buildings' (l. 16).

17. 2. *dēlectābant-ur*, 'used to be delighted (or pleased).'

4. *animō acrī et impigrō*, 'with (=of) keen and active mind' ; Ablative of Quality, used like an Adjective (*keen-minded*) after the verb 'to be.' Cp. § 2, l. 14.

8. *Britannōs cantāvisse*, Accusative with Infinitive ; § 2, l. 10.

9. *dēlectā-mini*, 'are delighted,' with *vōs*, 'you' ; Passive of *dēlectā-tis*. Translate 'you boys of the present day take pleasure in . . .'

10. *patru-issime*, 'kindest,' 'most like a kind uncle,' is the Vocative of *patruissimus*, a Superlative invented by the poet Plautus as a joke. It is formed not from any Adjective, but from the Noun *patru-us* ; as though we were to say in English 'uncle, uncl-er, uncl-est.'

11. *dēlectā-ris*, 'you are delighted,' 'you take pleasure' ; Passive of *dēlectā-s*. Here it stands in a question : *nōn-ne dēlectāris?* 'are you not delighted?' *corporis certāminibus*, 'by contests of the body' = 'by athletic sports.'

13. *dēlectāba-r*, 'I used to be delighted' ; Passive of *dēlectāba-m*. *adulescens* here stands in apposition to 'I' ; 'I, a young man,' or 'I, as a young man.'

14. *dēlectābo-r*, 'I shall be delighted' ; Passive of *dēlectābō*.

18, 19. There are two lines of verse by a poet of the first century A.D. 'Nor hast thou less mobility =(quickness of movement), if perchance it pleases thee either to double (=to return) the flying ball or to pick it up (=to catch it) falling.' *volant-em* and *cadent-em* are Acc. Sing. of Adjectives formed from the Verbs *volō* (1st Conj.) and *cadō* (3rd Conj.) : Nom. *volan-s*, *cadēn-s*, like *monstran-s* in O.M. § 41, *digitō ad orientem monstrans*.

20. *mūtātō nōmine*, etc., 'the story is told about you with changed name (=under a different name).' This is a quotation from Horace ; it means 'the cap fits you.'

THIS RULE IS  
TRUE OF ALL THE  
FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

### Formation of the Passive Voice.

It will be seen that the Passive of the Present, the Past Imperfect and the Future Tenses is formed from the Active

- (i.) by adding *-ur* in the 3rd Persons Sing. and Plur. ;
- (ii.) by adding *-r* in the 1st Persons Sing. and Plur. ; which *r* displaces the last letter of the Active if it is a consonant.

- (iii.) by changing the *-s* of the 2nd Person Sing. into *-ris*, and the *-tis* of the 2nd Person Plur. into *-minī*.

Thus we get (with some changes in the quantities of the vowels) :—

|    | <i>PRESENT PASS.</i> | <i>PAST IMPERF. PASS.</i> | <i>FUTURE PASS.</i> |
|----|----------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| S. | dēlecto-r            | dēlectāba-r               | dēlectābo-r         |
|    | dēlectā-ris          | dēlectābā-ris             | dēlectābe-ris *     |
|    | dēlectāt-ur          | dēlectābāt-ur             | dēlectābit-ur       |
| P. | dēlectāmu-r          | dēlectābāmu-r             | dēlectābimu-r       |
|    | dēlectā-minī         | dēlectābā-minī            | dēlectābi-minī      |
|    | dēlectant-ur         | dēlectābant-ur            | dēlectābunt-ur      |

\* Note that in this form (2nd Pers. Sing. Fut.) there is a further change of *i* into *e*; *delectabi-s* becomes *delectabe-ris*.

† 18. In this section it will be seen that Questions may be introduced either (1) by words like *cūr*, 'why'; *quota hōra*, 'what o'clock'; *quandō*, 'when'; or (2) by a word like *num* or *-ne*, which need not be translated by any separate word in English. There is a great difference between these two kinds of question. Try answering them. The second kind may be answered by a simple 'yes' or 'no'; thus *nōn-ne melius erit?* 'will it not be better?' expects the answer 'yes': and *num vōs viri minus fortēs eritis?* 'will you men be less brave?' (§ 8) expects the answer 'no.' But the first kind cannot be answered by either 'yes' or 'no,' and takes no *num* or *-ne*.

3. *Rutupiās*, 'to Richborough'; Accusative of the Plural Name *Rutupiae*; cp. *Rōmam dēportāvērunt*, § 5, l. 26.—So in l. 9 (lit. 'you will come to R.' = 'you will arrive at R.') .

14. *melius*, 'better,' Neuter Comparative of *bonus*, *a*, *um*; cp. *optimus*, § 15, l. 12.

16. *festināre*, 'to hurry,' different from *properāre*, 'to hasten.'

20. *quandō*, 'when?' (= 'at what time?'), differs from *cum*, 'when' (l. 9).

19. [qui, quae, quod and quis, quid, in questions.]

2. *ā Calēdonib⁹ reportātā*; cp. § 5, ll. 12, 13, *ā Britanni⁹ reportātam*.

3. quis, 'who,' agreeing with *Galgacus* ('Galgacus was who ?').

8. quid, 'what,' agreeing with *nōmen*.

12. qui, 'who,' agreeing with *Picti*.

15. quō, 'at what,' agreeing with *tempore*; cp. *eō tempore*, § 3, l. 15.

18. quā *ex=ex quā*, 'from what,' with *terrā*.

21. quem, 'whom'; *fuisse*, 'to have been,' from *fui*. Cp. § 2, l. 10.

24. cūius, 'of which,' agreeing with *partis*.

It will be seen that *qui*, *quae*, *quod* is used as an Adjective, = English 'what ?' or 'which ?' In the Nominative Case Singular there is also a Pronoun, *quis* (Masc. and Fem.) = 'who ?' *quid* (Neut.) = 'what ?'

|      | SINGULAR.           |                     |                      |
|------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| Nom. | Masc.<br>qui (quis) | Fem.<br>quae (quis) | Neut.<br>quod (quid) |
| Acc. | quem                | quam                | quod (quid)          |
| Gen. |                     | cūius               |                      |
| Dat. |                     | cūi                 |                      |
| Abl. | quō                 | quā                 | quō                  |
|      | PLURAL.             |                     |                      |
| Nom. | Masc.<br>qui        | Fem.<br>quae        | Neut.<br>quae        |
| Acc. | quōs                | quās                | quae                 |
| Gen. | quōrum              | quārum              | quōrum               |
| Dat. | {                   | quibus              |                      |
| Abl. |                     | quibus              |                      |

The Dative Singular is one syllable (compare *hūic*, § 12, end); but it is sometimes pronounced as two syllables in order to distinguish it from the Nom. Masc.

20. [qui, quae, quod, without any questioning sense.]
7. qui, 'who,' referring to *Hadriānō*.
10. eūius, 'of which' or 'whose,' referring to *vallum*.
11. qui, 'who,' referring to *Antōnius Pius*.
13. cui, 'to which,' referring to *vallum*.
14. quem, 'whom,' referring to *Septimius Sevērus*.
15. *paucis annīs ante*, 'a few years before,' lit. 'by a few years before (or previously)' ; *ante* is here an Adverb, not a Preposition.
17. *Eburācī*, 'at York' ; Locative Case of *Eburācum*; cp. on § 5, l. 22.
18. quō, 'in which,' agreeing with *annō*.      *trucidāta fuisse narrantur*, 'are said to have been slaughtered.'
20. ō sī sic om̄nēs, lit. 'oh, if thus all !' = 'oh, if they had killed them all thus !'

It will be seen that *qui*, *quae*, *quod* (but not *quis* or *quid*) may be used without any questioning sense, just like the English 'who' or 'which.' Sometimes it begins a separate sentence, as in the last instance above (*Quō annō quinquāgintā mīlia Rōmānōrum trucidāta fuisse narrantur*), which is just as much a separate sentence as if it were a question (*Quō annō . . . narrantur ?* 'in which year are fifty thousand Romans said to have-been slaughtered ?'). But generally *qui*, *quae*, *quod* begins a little sentence which is only a part of a bigger sentence, as in *Septimius Sevērus [quem Rōmānī paucis annīs ante principem creāverant] maximam expeditiōnem comparāvit*. In such cases the little sentence, here printed in square brackets, is called at Subordinate Clause. But if you examine it, you will find that it is complete in itself: 'whom the Romans had created emperor is like 'whom had the Romans created emperor ?' (*Quem Rōmānī principem creāverant ?*), except that it is not a question. This helps us to see the reason for the Case and the Gender and Number of *quem*. It is in the Accusative Case because, if the clause were turned into a separate sentence, the word for 'whom' would have to be in the Accusative Case : it is in the Masculine Gender and the Singular Number because it refers to *Septimius Sevērus* which stands in the other clause of the sentence. Thus in order to find the Case of 'which' turn the clause into a separate sentence : in order to find its Gender and Number think of what is meant by the word.

**RULE.**—**Qui**, **quae**, **quod**, when it introduces a Subordinate Clause, stands in the Case in which it would stand if the Clause were a separate sentence; and it agrees in Gender and Number with the Noun to which it refers.

Note that the Case of the Noun to which it refers may *happen* to be the same as the Case of *qui*, *quae*, *quod* itself, as in *Antōnīus Pius, qui . . .*; see l. 11.

† 21. 1. *tū-ne Pictus es?* ‘are you a Pict?’ The *-ne* turns the statement into a question, as in § 18, l. 14, *nōn-ne melius erit?*; and the word *tū* is put in because it is emphatic. ‘Are you a Pict?’ (without emphasis) would be *Pictus-ne es?* ‘Are you not a Pict?’ would be *Nōn-ne Pictus es?*

3. *Celticā origine*, ‘of Celtic origin’; cp. *animō fortī*, § 2, l. 14.

4. *et frātris tuī*, ‘and your brother’s (name).’

6, 7. *tōtī insulae nōmen est Britanniae*, ‘to the whole island there is the name Britain,’ ‘the whole island has the name Britain’; cp. on § 5, l. 13 (*nōmen Britanicō*).

14. *Antōnī*, Vocative of *Antōnīus* (the writer of these Commentaries); cp. *filiī*, Vocative of *filius*.

18. *ubi libertās, ibi patria est*, ‘where (or wherever) there is freedom, there is the fatherland.’

22. [2nd Conjugation; Pres., Past Imperf., and Future, Active.]

2. *videō*, ‘I see.’ Carefully note the endings of the Verbs in black print below, and compare them with the endings of the 1st Conj. All Verbs of the 2nd Conj. will be found in the Vocabulary with the ending *eō*.

5. *vident*, ‘they see.’      *salvētē!* ‘hail!’ lit. ‘be safe and sound.’      *gaudēmus*, ‘we are glad.’

7. *respondeſt*, ‘replies,’ ‘responds.’      *bene nōs habēmus*, lit. ‘we have ourselves well’ = ‘we are all right’; *nous nous portons bien..*

8. *nōs nōn pigēbit*, ‘it will not vex us’ = ‘we shall not mind.’ *Piget*, ‘it vexes,’ is a Verb which can only be used in the 3rd Pers. Sing.; cp. ‘it rains,’ etc.      *sedēre*, ‘to sit down.’

9. *habēbimus*, ‘we shall have.’      *in oculīs* = ‘in sight.’

10. *vidētis-ne*, ‘do you see?’      *ut . . . dēlet*, ‘how time destroys everything.’

11. *rīdent*, ‘laugh,’ or ‘smile’; cp. *cachinnāre*, § 17, l. 15.

14. *iacet*, 'it lies' = 'it is situated' (*situm est*).  
 19. *dēlētus*, *a*, *um*, 'destroyed,' an Adjective formed from *dēleō*. *spectat ad*, 'looks towards' = 'faces.'  
 22. *habēbat*, 'it used to have,' 'it had.'  
 24. *vidēs*, 'you see' = 'one sees'; cp. O.M. § 11, *ex castellō fretum Gallicum spectās*, 'one looks at the English Channel.'

It will be seen that the Present, the Past Imperfect and the Future Tenses of the 2nd Conjugation differ from those of the 1st Conjugation only in having an *e* instead of an *a* in the endings. (In the 1st Conjugation the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present has lost its *a*: *spectō* is for *spectaō*).

### Second Conjugation—Pres., Past Imperf., Fut.

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

|    | <i>PRESENT.</i> | <i>PAST IMPERFECT.</i> | <i>FUTURE.</i>   |
|----|-----------------|------------------------|------------------|
| S. | <i>habeō</i>    | <i>habēbam</i>         | <i>habēbō</i>    |
|    | <i>habēs</i>    | <i>habēbās</i>         | <i>habēbis</i>   |
|    | <i>habet</i>    | <i>habēbat</i>         | <i>habēbit</i>   |
| P. | <i>habēmus</i>  | <i>habēbāmus</i>       | <i>habēbimus</i> |
|    | <i>habētis</i>  | <i>habēbātis</i>       | <i>habēbitis</i> |
|    | <i>habent</i>   | <i>habēbant</i>        | <i>habēbunt</i>  |

| <i>INFINITIVE.</i> |      | <i>IMPERATIVE.</i> |
|--------------------|------|--------------------|
| <i>habēre</i>      | S. 2 | <i>habē</i>        |
|                    | P. 2 | <i>habēte</i>      |

### 23. [4th Declension and 2nd Conjugation, Passive (same tenses).]

1. *portus*, 'a port,' 'a harbour.' The case-endings of the Nouns printed black in this section should be compared with those of the 2nd Decl.; for instance, *portus* with *hortus*.

2. *Portui Rutupinō*, 'Richborough Harbour,' agreeing in Case with *cūi*. Cp. on § 21, ll. 6, 7.  
 3. *ad hunc portum*, 'to this harbour.'  
 4. *omnium portuum*, 'of all harbours.'  
 6. *in litore portūs*, 'on the shore of the harbour.'  
 12. *quattuor et quadrāgintā passūs longum*, 'forty-four paces (or yards) long.'

13. *in manū*, 'in the hand' = 'in our hands.'  
*tenēbamus*, 'we held,' or 'we were holding,' from *teneō*.

16. *pertinet*, 'extends,' 'stretches'; from *per-tineō* (which is a compound of *per* and *teneō*, lit. 'I hold through').

17. *ūsui*, 'for use' (Dat.). *Cui* is also a Dative, so that the literal translation of the sentence is 'To whom was this tunnel for a use?' or 'To whom did this tunnel exist for a purpose?' In English we should say, 'To whom was it *of use*, or *useful*?' This example throws light upon the meaning of the Dative in such sentences as *ei Britannia nōn cūrae erat* (§ 2, l. 20), where we should naturally say in English, 'to him Britain was not *an anxiety*'; but the Latin means properly 'to him Britain did not serve as *an anxiety*=*was not a cause of anxiety*.'

19. *dē ūsū*, 'about (or concerning) the use.'

20. *sī castellum obsidēbātur*, 'if (=if at any time) the castle was besieged'; Passive of *obsidēbat* from *ob-sideō* (which is a Compound of *ob* and *sedeō*, lit. 'I sit down against').

21. *praebērī*, 'to be provided'; Passive of *praebēre*, 'to provide.' *Praebeō* is contracted from *prae-hibeō*, lit. 'I hold forth (-hibeō=habeō).

23. *ad dextrum cornū*, 'at the right wing'; *cornū* is (not Abl. but) Accusative Singular of a Neuter Noun of the 4th Decl.

28. *cusiōdem valēre iubēmus*, 'we bid the keeper good-day (lit. to-be-in-good-health).'

#### Fourth Declension.

|               | MASCULINES & FEMININES. |                   | NEUTERS.       |                   |
|---------------|-------------------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|
|               | SING.                   | PLUR.             | SING.          | PLUR.             |
| <i>N., V.</i> | <i>portus</i>           |                   | <i>cornū</i>   |                   |
| <i>Acc.</i>   | <i>portum</i>           | { <i>portūs</i>   | { <i>cornū</i> | <i>cornua</i>     |
| <i>Gen.</i>   | <i>portūs</i>           | <i>portuum</i>    | <i>cornūs</i>  | <i>cornuum</i>    |
| <i>Dat.</i>   | <i>portūi</i>           | { <i>portibus</i> | <i>cornui</i>  | { <i>cornibus</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i>   | <i>portū</i>            |                   | <i>cornū</i>   |                   |

RULE OF GENDER.—Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-us* are Masculine, except a few which are Feminine (*manus*, 'hand'; *Idūs*, plur., 'Ides'; and a few others). Note that none of these Feminines end in *-tus*; all those that end in *-tus* are Masculine.

Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-ū* are Neuter.

## Second Conjugation—Pres., Past Imperf., Fut.

PASSIVE VOICE (see Rule, § 17).

|    |   | PRESENT.  | PAST IMPERFECT. | FUTURE.      |
|----|---|-----------|-----------------|--------------|
| S. | 1 | habeo-r   | habēba-r        | habēbo-r     |
|    | 2 | habē-ris  | habēbā-ris      | habēbe-ris * |
|    | 3 | habēt-ur  | habēbāt-ur      | habēbit-ur   |
| P. | 1 | habēmu-r  | habēbāmu-r      | habēbimu-r   |
|    | 2 | habē-minī | habēbā-minī     | habēbi-mini  |
|    | 3 | habent-ur | habēbant-ur     | habēbunt-ur  |

\* Note that in this form (2nd Pers. Sing. Fut.) there is a further change of *i* into *e*, as in the 1st Conj.: *habēbi-s* becomes *habēbe-ris*.

| INFINITIVE. | IMPERATIVE.     |
|-------------|-----------------|
| habēri      | Not yet learned |

## 24. [Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active, 2nd Conj.]

2. *dēlēv-it*, 'destroyed,' from *dēleō*. Contrast *spectāv-i*, *-istī*, *-it*, etc.
3. *con-stat*, lit. 'stands' or 'is fixed'; hence 'is known.'
5. *habēt-ur*, 'is held.' *Habeō* may mean 'I hold' as well as 'I have.'

6. *Aqua haerēbat*, 'the water was sticking,' means 'the clock stopped' or 'there was a hitch.' The Romans used water clocks, time being measured by the water running out.  
*habu-imus*, 'we had.'

9. *in manib⁹ habu-erat*, 'had had in her hands' = 'had been reading.'

10. *tenu-ērunt*, 'held,' from *teneō*, § 23, l. 13.

13. *rēvērā insula*, 'really an island.' The so called 'Isle of Thanet' is now part of the mainland.

15. *duo tantum vel tria mīlia passuum*, 'only two or three miles (lit. thousands of paces).' The Latin for 'a mile' is *mille passūs* (lit. a thousand paces), and for 'miles' is *mīlia passuum*, which was sometimes shortened to *mīlia* alone, whence comes our word 'mile' and the French *mille*.

17. *habu-ērunt*, 'had' or 'got.'      *rīs-imus*, 'laughed,' from *rīdeō*, § 22, l. 11.

26. *Germanica*. The German words are *Angel* 'angle,' and *Kante* 'corner,' 'edge.' The *vir doctus* of l. 18 is Dr. John Evans.

It will be seen that the Perfect Stem Active of the 2nd Conjugation may be formed in several different ways :

- (1) It may end in *ēv-* ; thus *dēlēv-* from *dēleō*, which is like *spectāv-* from *spectō*. But this way is not common in the 2nd Conj.
- (2) It may end in *u-* ; thus *habu-* from *habeō*. This is the commonest way.
- (3) It may end in *s-* ; thus *rīs-* from *rīdeō* (the *d* being dropped).
- (4) It may be formed without any suffix ; thus *respond-* from *respondeō* (§ 25, l. 4).

#### Second Conjugation—Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active.

|    | <i>PERFECT.</i>    | <i>PLUPERFECT.</i> | <i>FUTURE PERFECT.</i> |
|----|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| S. | habu- <i>i</i>     | habu-eram          | habu-erō               |
|    | habu-ist <i>l</i>  | habu-erās          | habu-eris              |
|    | habu- <i>it</i>    | habu-erat          | habu-erit              |
| P. | habu-im <i>us</i>  | habu-erāmus        | habu-erimus            |
|    | habu-ist <i>is</i> | habu-erātis        | habu-eritis            |
|    | habu-ērunt         | habu-erant         | habu-erint             |

*INFINITIVE.*  
habu-isse

Similarly conjugate *dēlēv-i*, *-ist*l**, *-it*, etc. ; *rīs-i*, *-ist*l**, *-it*, etc. ; *respond-i*, *-ist*l**, *-it*, etc.

† 25. 4. *aqua haes-it* (from *haeveō*, § 24, l. 6), 'the clock stopped.' *respond-imus*, 'answered,' 'replied,' from *respondeō*, § 22, l. 7.

5. *ab-hinc annōs duōs*, lit. 'from-hence two years' = 'two years ago.' *saécula tredecim fuerant*, 'there had been thirteen centuries' = 'thirteen centuries had elapsed.'

6. *ex quō=ex quō tempore*, 'from what time,' 'since.'

11. *Augustīnum . . . docēre iuss-erat* (from *iubeō*, § 23, l. 28), 'had bidden Augustine to teach.' *nōtitiam* depends on *docēre*.

16. *Durovernī* (Locative), *in capite*, 'at Canterbury, in the capital' = 'at Canterbury, the capital,' without 'in.'

17. *praebu-it* (= *prae-hibu-it*), 'provided,' from *praebēō* (= *prae-hibeō*), § 23, l. 21. *domum*, 'a home,' from *domus* (fem.).

† 26. i. *ante-quam*, lit. 'before than' or 'earlier than,' = 'before the time when' or simply 'before.' But this 'before,' which is followed by a Verb in a Subordinate Clause (*praebuit*) must be distinguished from the Preposition 'before,' which in Latin is *ante*: cp. *ante finem*, § 1, l. 3. See note on *post-quam* and *post*, § 2, l. 1. *Ante-quam* and *post-quam* join on a little sentence which forms part of a larger sentence, and are therefore called Subordinating 'Conjunctions': cp. note at end of § 20.

10. *in hunc modum*; cp. § 13, l. 1.

16. *prohibēbō vōs manēre*, 'I shall forbid you to remain,' like *Augustīnum docēre iussērat*, § 25, ll. 10, 11. *Prohibēō* is a compound of *habeō*, lit. 'I for-hold' ('I hold away,' cp. 'for-bid'); quite different from *praebēō*. *Prohibēō* often takes the Infin.

27. [Perfects and Pluperfects Passive of the 1st or 2nd Conj.]

5. *aedificātae erant*, 'had been built.' The literal translation is 'were (*erant*) built (*aedificātae*)', but this would not give the meaning in English; for it would naturally mean 'used to be built,' which would be *aedificābantur* in Latin. *Aedificātae erant* means 'were *already* built,' just as we might say 'My letter was written before yours arrived'; here 'was written' = 'had been written.' Notice, then, that English phrases like 'was written,' 'were built,' etc., may be used in two different senses, which in Latin are expressed by two different tenses (the Pluperfect and the Past Imperfect). *Dubrīs*, 'at Dover'; Locative Case of *Dubrae*. The Locative of a Plural Name like *Dubrae* or *Rutupiae* is the same in form as the Ablative. Contrast *Virocōniī*, *Dēvae*, etc. (§ 5, l. 22) and *Callēvae* below (l. 6).

6. *vīd-istis* and *vīd-ī* are Perf. Act. of *videō*. The Pronouns *vōs* and *ego* are put in because they are emphatic: 'you have seen at Dover and I at Silchester.'

9. *dēportātus est*, 'was carried-off.' Note the translation 'was carried-off,' where the Latin is literally 'is carried-off.' But the English 'is carried-off' would naturally mean 'is generally carried-off,' which would be in Latin *dēportātur* (Present Tense); so we use 'was' in such cases. With the whole sentence compare the Active construction in § 5, ll. 25 and 26.

12. *aceūsāta est*, 'she was accused,' lit. 'she is accused.'

13. *Pompōniae Graecīnae*; compare § 21, l. 7, and § 23, l. 2.

15. *dēlēv-erant*, 'they had destroyed'; cp. *dēlēv-it*, § 24, l. 2.

17. *dēlēta erat*, 'had been destroyed'; here we might say 'was destroyed.' For the Adj. *dēlētus*, *a*, *um*, see § 22, l. 19.

19. *tenentēs*, 'holding,' and *cantantēs*, 'singing,' are Active Adjectives formed from the Verbs *teneō* and *cantō*. The vowel before the *-nt* is *e* when the Adjective comes from a Verb of the 2nd Conjugation, *a* when it comes from a Verb of the 1st Conj.

20. *ā domō tuā sanctā*, 'from Thy holy house'; *domō* is the Ablative of the Feminine Noun *domus*, which belongs partly to the 2nd, but mainly to the 4th Decl., and which has a Locative Case (= 'at home').

|               | SINGULAR.               | PLURAL.                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------|---|
| <i>N., V.</i> | <i>domus</i>            | <i>domūs</i>                                |
| <i>Acc.</i>   | <i>domum</i>            | <i>domēs</i> (2nd decl.)                    |
| <i>Gen.</i>   | <i>domūs</i>            | <i>domuum</i> (4th) or <i>domōrum</i> (2nd) |
| <i>Dat.</i>   | <i>domui</i>            | <i>}domibus</i>                             |
| <i>Abl.</i>   | <i>domō</i> (2nd decl.) |   |
| <i>Loc.</i>   | <i>domī</i> (2nd decl.) |   |

#### Formation of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice.

These Tenses are formed by means of the Passive Adjective and the Verb 'to be,' as in English; but the tense of the Verb 'to be' is generally different in the two languages.

**Perfect:** Passive Adj. + *sum*; English, 'I have-been \_\_\_\_', or 'I was \_\_\_\_'; thus *aedificātae sunt*, 'they have-been built,' or 'they were built' (lit. 'they are built'); *dēlēta est*, 'it has-been destroyed,' or 'it was destroyed' (lit. 'it is destroyed').

**Pluperfect:** Passive Adj. + *eram*; English, 'I had-been \_\_\_\_'. thus *aedificātae erant*, 'they had-been built' (lit. 'they were built'); *dēlēta erat*, 'it had-been destroyed' (lit. 'it was destroyed').

**Future Perf.** Passive Adj. + *erō*; English, 'I shall have been \_\_\_\_'; thus *aedificātae erunt*, 'they will-have-been built' (lit. 'they will-be built'); *dēlēta erit*, 'it will have been destroyed' (lit. 'it will-be destroyed').

Notice that the Passive Adjective must agree in Gender and Number, and the Verb 'to be' in Number and Person, with the Noun of which it is said; thus, *Pompōnia Graecīna accūsāta est*; *basilicae aedificātae sunt*.

[The above rules apply to all four Conjugations.]

## 28. [Nouns of the 5th Declension.]

3. *misericordiā com-mōv-erat*, 'had moved with pity.'
4. *multīs annīs ante*; cp. *paucīs annīs ante*, § 20, l. 15.
5. *faciē pulchrā*, 'with (or of) handsome face (or appearance)', cp. § 2, l. 14.
6. *com-mōtus est*, 'he was moved,' Perf. Pass.
8. *quōrum in manū*, 'in whose possession (lit. hand).'
11. *hūiūs faciēī*, 'of this appearance.' The Gen. has here the same meaning as the Abl. in l. 5.
13. *faciēs*, 'face,' 'appearance'; Nom. Sing.
14. *quōs . . . habet*, 'whom the King of Darkness (=the Devil) has as ministers (or servants).' These are the words of Gregory, as reported by the Venerable Bede. The phrase *Rex Tenebrārum* could not have been used by a classical Latin writer in this sense.
16. *eōs esse*, 'them to be' = 'that they were'; cp. § 2, l. 10.
17. *angelicam faciem*, 'an angelic face (or appearance).'
18. *eōs vocārī oportet*, 'they ought to be called,' lit. 'it behoves them to be called.' *Oportet* can only be used in the 3rd Pers. Sing.; cp. *piget*, § 22, l. 8.
22. *ad fidem*, 'to the faith'; from *fidēs*. The word is here used in a specially Christian sense; in classical Latin it means 'loyalty' or 'allegiance.'
25. *diēs*, 'the day'; Nom. Sing.

## Fifth Declension.

|                   | SINGULAR.     | PLURAL.           |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| <i>Nom., Voc.</i> | <i>faciēs</i> | { <i>faciēs</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i>       | <i>faciem</i> |                   |
| <i>Gen.</i>       | <i>faciēī</i> | { <i>faciērum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i>       | <i>faciēī</i> |                   |
| <i>Abl.</i>       | <i>faciē</i>  | { <i>faciēbus</i> |

**RULE OF GENDER.**—All Nouns of the 5th Declension are Feminine, except *diēs*, which is generally Masculine (though sometimes Feminine in the Singular Number).

† 29. 1. *diēī* (5th Decl.) *illīus bellī*, 'of that jolly day.'

3. *vehiculum parātum erat*, 'the carriage was prepared (or was ready).' Here we have an excellent example to show how the Pluperf. Pass. may sometimes be translated literally by 'was —': but here too it *may* be translated 'had-been prepared.'

6. *domī*, Locative; see on § 27, l. 20.      *longō diē*; Abl.= 'by.'

9. *mans-*, from *maneō* (§ 26, l. 16), as *rīs-*, from *rideō*.

† 30. 1. *post Idūs*, 'after the Ides.' The Ides of September, as of most months of the Roman year, fell on the 13th. But—

In March, July, October, May  
The Ides were on the fifteenth day.

2. *ēlapsī sunt*, 'are elapsed,' = 'have slipped away'; cp. § 1, l. 2.    *āter*, 'black.' The Romans called unlucky days 'black days.'

5. *verbum 'valē'* = the word 'goodbye'; *valē*, lit. 'be well,' or 'fare-well,' from *valeō*; like *salvē*, 'be safe and sound,' from *salveō* (§ 22, l. 5). But *salvē* came to be used for 'how do you do?' and *valē* for 'good-bye' (which = *God be with you*).

7. *valēre iubēbō*; cp. § 23, ll. 27, 28, *custōdem valēre iubēmus*.

8. *māne* is properly an Abl. Case = 'in the morning'; thus *ā māne* is lit. 'from in-the-morning,' but may be translated simply 'from the morning'; cp. the phrase *māne erat*, lit. 'it was in-the-morning' = 'it was morning.'

9. *diēs fēriātī*, 'holi-days,' i.e. holy days; days of festivals (*fēriāe*).    *diēs profestī*, 'working-days'; *pro-festus* is the opposite of *festus* or *fēriātus*, 'festal.'

10, 11. An imitation of two well-known lines of Ovid [*Fasti* i. 47 and 50]. Line 11 means 'And the day, which will be a holiday, was in the morning a working-day' — a description of a half-holiday. In l. 10, *silent-ur* (Passive of *silent*, from *sileō*) almost = 'are silenced.'

The metre is 'dactylic,' as in Coleridge's lines:

'In the hexāmeter rises the fóuntain's sílver cólumn;  
'In the pentámeter áye fálling in mélody báck.'

12. *trēs rēs*, 'three things,' 'three realities'; Nom. Plur. of the important Noun *rēs*, 5th Decl. (whence Engl. 're-al').

† 31. 2. *septem diēs*, 'for seven days.' Time how long is generally expressed in Latin by the Accusative without a Preposition, and often in English without 'for.' *iam sum*, lit. 'I am now' = 'I have now been and still am'; cp. in English—

'Over the great restless ocean  
Six and twenty years *I roam*,'

where the Present Tense = 'I have been and still am roaming.'

3. *ut valēs*? 'how do you do?; lit. 'how well are you?'

7. *tē salvēre iubet*, 'sends you his kind regards'; cp. § 23, l. 28; § 30, l. 7. *quid novī*, lit. 'anything of new' = 'anything new,' 'any news': *novī* is Gen. Sing. of the Neuter Adj. *novum*, 'a new thing.' Latin is very fond of such Genitives where we in English do not generally say 'of': thus in O.M., § 30, *aliquantum temporis*, 'some time,' lit. 'a lot of time.'

10. *illīc nātās*, 'produced (lit. born) there': cp. 'native oysters.'

14. *rīdens* (*rīdent-*), 'laughing'; from *rīdeō*; cp. *tenant-ēs*, § 27, l. 19.

15. *dē rē*, 'about the fact'; Abl. Sing. of *rēs*, § 30, l. 12.

17. *litterās dedit*, 'has sent letters,' lit. 'has given letters.'

18, 19. *Ministrum nostrum qui Coloniīs praeest* = 'our Secretary of State for the Colonies.'

21. *Reīpublicae*, 'of the Republic,' from *rēspūblica*. This is really two words, (1) *rēs*, the Noun of the 5th Decl., (2) *publica*, an Adjective agreeing with it. Both together = 'commonwealth,' or 're-public.' In declining the word, both parts must be changed: thus—

|             | SINGULAR.         | PLURAL.*                |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>rēspūblica</i> |                         |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>rēpublicam</i> |                         |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>rēpublicae</i> |                         |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>rēpublicae</i> |                         |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>rēpublicā</i>  |                         |
|             |                   | <i>rēpublicae</i>       |
|             |                   | <i>rēpublicās</i>       |
|             |                   | <i>rērum publicarūm</i> |
|             |                   | <i>rēbus publicis</i>   |

\* The Plural means 'commonwealths' or 'republics,' and should not be translated 'public affairs.'

## 32. [3rd Conjugation, Present, Active and Passive.]

1. *quaesō*, 'I ask'; often used like 'please' (= please tell me). Carefully note the endings of the Verbs in black print below, and compare them with the endings of the 1st and 2nd Conj. The 3rd is the most difficult of the Conjugations, and will require special attention.

2. *longum est dicere*, 'it is a long story (lit. a long-thing) to tell' *dicere* is the Present Infinitive of *dicō*; note that the *e* before the *r* is short, whereas in the 2nd Conj. it is long.

4. *colunt*, 'cultivate,' 'till'; *in-colunt* (l. 6), 'inhabit.'

6. *disputatur*, 'it is being disputed' = 'the dispute is.'

7. *ab hōc ad illum*, 'from the latter to the former.'

8. *per*, 'for,' lit. 'through'—another way of expressing time how long; cp. on § 31, l. 2. *mittunt-ur*, 'are being sent,' Passive of *mittunt*, 'they are sending,' from *mittō*, 'I send' (or 'I let-go'). For the Present Tense with *iam* see on § 31, l. 2.

9. *aquam perdimus*, 'we waste the water' = 'we are losing time'; see note on the water-clock, § 24, l. 6. *Per-dō* is a Compound of *per* and *dō*: note that nearly all the Compounds of *dō* (and they are many) belong to the 3rd Conj. *Dō* itself belongs to the 1st Conj., and has the Infin. *dāre*; but observe that the *a* is short (unlike any other Verb of the 1st Conj.). Two Compounds of *dō* which have the Infinitive *-dāre* (not *-dēre*) are *circum-dō* and *vēnum-dō*. *currit hōra*, 'time flies,' lit. 'the hour is running.'

11. *ad-mittō*, 'I admit'; lit. 'I let-go to,' 'I let in.'

12. *rē vērā*, Abl. of *rēs vēra*, 'a true thing'; hence 'in truth,' 'in reality,' 'really.' Sometimes written as one word (§ 24, l. 13)

17. *ad-mitti*, 'to be admitted,' 'to be let in'; Pres. Infin. Pass. of *admittō*. Note the peculiar way in which the Passive Infinitive is formed in this Conjugation:—

|           |    |        |               |         |                               |
|-----------|----|--------|---------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| 1st Conj. | .. | Active | <i>-āre</i> , | Passive | <i>-āri</i>                   |
| 2nd Conj. | .. | Active | <i>-ēre</i> , | Passive | <i>-ēri</i>                   |
| 3rd Conj. | .. | Active | <i>-ěre</i> , | Passive | <i>-i</i> (not <i>-ěri</i> ). |

*oportet eōs admitti*; cp. § 28, l. 18, *oportet eōs vocāri Angelōs*.

18, 19. *nōs ad-mittimus*, 'we admit.'

20. *vestram*, 'your' = 'of you Boers.'

## Third Conjugation—Present Tense.

|      | <i>ACTIVE.</i> | <i>PASSIVE</i> (Rule, § 17). |
|------|----------------|------------------------------|
| S. 1 | mittō          | mitto-r                      |
|      | mittis         | mitte-ris *                  |
|      | mittit         | mittit-ur                    |
| P. 1 | mittimus       | mittimu-r                    |
|      | mittitis       | mitti-mini                   |
|      | mittunt        | mittunt-ur                   |

\* Note the change of *i* into *e*, which in this Conjugation appears in the Present Tense Passive. In the 1st and 2nd Conj. it came only in the Future.

| <i>INFINITIVE ACTIVE.</i> | <i>INFINITIVE PASSIVE.</i> |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| mittere                   | mitti                      |

## 33. [3rd Conjugation, Past Imperfect, Active and Passive.]

11. *iacebat*, 'lay,' from *iaceō*, 2nd Conj., § 22, l. 14.      *influēbat* (same ending), 'it flowed in,' from *in-fluō*, 3rd Conj.
12. *dividēbat-ur*, 'was divided'; cp. *dividit-ur* in l. 13.
15. *ineolēbant-ur*, 'were inhabited,' 'used to be inhabited'; cp. § 32, l. 6.
17. *hominēs magnīs et rōbustīs membrīs*, 'people with (=of) great and sturdy limbs'; cp. *virī animō fortī*, § 2, l. 14.
18. *eōs fuisse dīcit*, 'declares them to have been' = 'says that they were'; cp. § 2, l. 10, and § 28, l. 16.

It will be seen that the Past Imperfect Tense has the same endings in the 3rd as in the 2nd Conjugation.

## Third Conjugation—Past Imperfect Tense.

|      | <i>ACTIVE.</i> | <i>PASSIVE</i> (Rule, § 17). |
|------|----------------|------------------------------|
| S. 1 | mittēbam       | mittēba-r                    |
|      | mittēbās       | mittēbā-ris                  |
|      | mittēbat       | mittēbāt-ur                  |
| P. 1 | mittēbāmus     | mittēbāmu-r                  |
|      | mittēbātis     | mittēbā-minī                 |
|      | mittēbant      | mittēbant-ur                 |

34. 1, 2. *manēbat . . . insigne*, 'their honour and the badge of their ancient union remained.' *insigne*, perhaps a flag.

4. *legite*, 'read'; Imperative Plural of *legō*, 'I read.'

11. *in-fundēbant-ur*, lit. 'were poured in' = 'poured themselves in.'

15. *Germānicā origine*, like *Celticā origine*, § 21, l. 3.

16. The Belgae of Britain had come over from Belgium.

18. *et nōs et illī*, 'both we and they.'

19. *nōmen Germānōrum*, 'the name of Germans' = 'the name Germans.'

### Third Conjugation—Imperative Active.

|      |         |
|------|---------|
| S. 2 | mitte   |
| P. 2 | mittite |

† 35. 7. *con-didērunt*, 'they founded,' lit. 'put together,' from *con-dō*. But *dedērunt* has been changed into *-didērunt*, and the Compound Verb has become 3rd Conj.; cp. on § 32, l. 9 (*per-dimus* from *per-dāmus*).

8. *ex quō tempore*, 'since which time'; cp. *ex quō*, § 25, l. 6.

13. *quā ex rē=ex quā rē*. *sibi sūmunt*, 'they take to themselves,' 'they give themselves.'

14. *sē posse*, 'themselves to be able,' depending on *dīcunt*.

*Britannōs vincere*, 'to conquer the Britons,' depending on *posse*; cp. *Britannōs vincere possumus*, 'we are able to defeat the Britons,' where *vincere* depends on *possumus*.

17. *novīs rēbus student*, 'they are bent on revolution (lit. new things)'; the verb *studeō* takes the Dative Case: lit. 'I am eager for' = 'I am bent on.'

18. *quan-dam*, 'a. certain'; Acc. Sing. Fem. of *qui-dam*, *quae-dam*, *quod-dam*, in which only the first part is declined. Note that *qui-*, *quae-*, *quod-* does not here mean 'who' or 'which,' but rather 'something.'

23. *ob-tinēre* is a Compound of *ob* and *tenēre*, lit. 'to hold against'; hence 'to re-tain,' 'to main-tain'; *not* 'to ob-tain,' though that word is derived from *ob-tinēre*.

24. *con-ditum*, 'founded,' agreeing with *imperium*; it is the Passive Adjective from *con-dō*, but *dātus* has become *-dītus*.

## 38. [3rd Conjugation, Future, Active and Passive.]

I, 2. *magnum periculum esse dicit*, 'declares a great danger to exist,' or 'declares the danger to be great'; cp. § 28, l. 16.

4. *con-scribere nuntiantur*, 'are reported to be e<sup>r</sup>.rolling.'

6. *multō plūr-ēs*, 'far more-men,' lit. 'more by much': cp. the Abl. in *multis annis ante*, 'many years before,' § 28, l. 4. *Plūr-ēs* is the Plural of *plūs*.

7. *colōniae dēfendendae causā*, 'for the sake of defending the colony,' lit. 'of the colony to-be-defended'; compare *proelii spectandī causā*, § 9, l. 23. Note the Adj. in *-endus*, *a*, *um=andus*, *a*, *um* in the 1st Conj.

9. *dūcent*, 'shall lead'; from *dūcō*, § 33, l. 6.

9, 10. *prohibēbit eōs per-currere*, 'will prevent them from overrunning,' lit. 'will prevent them to overrun.' The Infinitive is used as in § 26, l. 16, *prohibēbō vōs manēre*, 'I will forbid you to remain.'

12. *mittēt-ur*, 'will be sent,' from *mittō*.

14. *rōbur et aes triplex*, 'oak and triple brass,' a quotation from Horace, here applied to British ironclads, as in O.M. § 41.

15. *dēfendet*, 'will defend,' from *dēfendō*.

16. *vineēmus*, 'we shall conquer,' from *vincō*, § 35, l. 14.

19. *mittet*, 'will send.'      *scribet*, 'he will write.'

20. *mittam*, 'I shall send.'      *leget*, 'he will read.'

21. *col-ligam*, 'I shall col-lect.'      *ex-seribam*, 'I shall write out.'

## Third Conjugation—Future Tense.

|    | <i>ACTIVE.</i>  | <i>PASSIVE</i> (Rule, § 17). |
|----|-----------------|------------------------------|
| S. | <b>mittam</b>   | <b>mitta-r</b>               |
|    | <b>mittēs</b>   | <b>mittē-ris</b>             |
|    | <b>mittet</b>   | <b>mittēt-ur</b>             |
| P. | <b>mittēmus</b> | <b>mittēmu-r</b>             |
|    | <b>mittētis</b> | <b>mittē-mi-ni</b>           |
|    | <b>mittent</b>  | <b>mittent-ur</b>            |

Note that the endings in this Tense are quite different from those of the Future in the 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

## 37. [Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active, 3rd Conj.]

1. *Si valēs*, etc. 'If you are well, it is well; I am well'—the regular way of beginning a letter in Latin, like the English 'I hope you are quite well.'

2. *aliquid novī*, 'something new,' like *quid novī*, § 31, l. 7. Understand *est*, 'there is.' The Greek proverb is mentioned by the Latin writer Pliny (*Historia Naturalis*, viii. ch. 17, § 42).

4. *litterās ultimās*, 'a final letter (or despatch),' 'an ultimatum.' *mis-ērunt*, 'they have sent,' from *mittō*.

5. *in-dix-ērunt*, 'they have declared,' from *in-dicō*. *nōbīs* (l. 4), 'upon us.'

7. *dē-dux-erimus*, 'we shall have with-drawn,' from *dē-dūcō*. *audāciam*. The Accusative is often found in Exclamations without a Verb; cp. O.M. § 2, *ō beātās fēriās!*

10. *māiōr-ēs*, 'greater,' agreeing with *cōpiās* understood.

13. *virōrum*, 'of men,' after *mīlia*; cp. § 9, ll. 12 and 21; § 24, l. 15.

16. *prō-mīs-it*, 'has promised,' from *prō-mittō*, lit. 'I let-go forth.'

20. *scrips-ī*, 'I have written,' from *scribō*.

It will be seen that some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form the Perfect Stem Active by adding an *-s*: thus, *scrib-*, *scrips-* (the *b* being turned into a *p*); *dīc-*, *dīx-* (= *dīcs-*); *mitt-*, *mis-* (the *tt* being dropped before the *s*). These are like *mans-*, *rīs-*, etc., in the 2nd Conjugation.

## Third Conjugation—Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active.

|      | <i>PERFECT.</i>  | <i>PLUPERFECT.</i> | <i>FUTURE PERFECT.</i> |
|------|------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| S. 1 | <i>mīs-ī</i>     | <i>mīs-erām</i>    | <i>mīs-erō</i>         |
| 2    | <i>mīs-istī</i>  | <i>mīs-erās</i>    | <i>mīs-eris</i>        |
| 3    | <i>mīs-it</i>    | <i>mīs-erāt</i>    | <i>mīs-erit</i>        |
| P. 1 | <i>mīs-imus</i>  | <i>mīs-erāmus</i>  | <i>mīs-erimus</i>      |
| 2    | <i>mīs-istis</i> | <i>mīs-erātis</i>  | <i>mīs-eritis</i>      |
| 3    | <i>mīs-ērunt</i> | <i>mīs-erant</i>   | <i>mīs-erint</i>       |

*INFINITIVE.*

*mīs-is*

38. (Note.) *Idibus*, 'on the Ides,' Abl. of Time when. A letter generally takes about eighteen days to travel from the Cape to England. *red-ditae*, Passive Adj. from *red-dō*.

2. *horrida terra* is in apposition to *Africa*. (The metre is dactylic ; see on § 30, l. 10.)

3. *poētae antiquī*, Ennius (born in the third century B.C.).

*lēg-istī*, 'have you read,' from *legō*, § 34, l. 4.

4. *vīc-imus*, 'we have conquered,' from *vincō*.

5. *dēfend-imus*, 'we have defended,' from *dēfendō*. *ut*, 'so far as.'

6. The thirteenth day before the 1st of November is October 20th, if we count in the 1st of November itself. The Roman months had the same number of days in them as ours.

7. *ad*, 'at' or 'near'—a meaning very like that of the Locative Case of Names of Towns.

9. *col-lēg-erant*, 'had collected,' from *col-ligō*, § 36, l. 21.

10. *prō-cueurr-ērunt*, 'ran forward,' 'advanced at a run,' from *prō-currō*; cp. *currit hōra*, § 32, l. 9.

11. *pepul-ērunt*, 'drove,' from *pellō*, § 35, l. 14.

11, 12. *lēgātus Britannicus* : General Sir W. Penn Symons. *vulnerātus*, an Adjective to *lēgātus Britannicus*. Cp. *ante oculōs principis collocātus*, § 6, l. 11. Similarly in l. 15 below *situm* is an Adjective to *Saltum Cervīnum*.

14. For *Saltus Cervīnus*, *Castra Mariāna*, etc., see Vocab.

16. *nostri* (Nom. Plur. Masc. of *noster*) = 'our-men,' lit. 'ours.'

17. *cohortēs*, here 'battalions' (of the British army).

19. *ascend-ērunt*, 'ascended,' from *ascendō*.

21. *ā-mis-ērunt*, 'lost,' from *ā-mittō* ('I let-go away').

23. *scribe*, Imperative Singular of *scribō* ; see § 34 (end).

24. This letter from Cape Colony (*Colōnia*, l. 23) was written on Oct. 26—five days after the battle of Elandslaagte.

It will be seen that some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form the Perfect Stem Active without any suffix : this is specially the case with stems ending in *nd*, like *dēfend-*, *ascend-*. Indeed all Verbs with stems in *nd-*, to whatever Conjugation they belong, form the Perfect Stem without any suffix (for instance, in the 2nd Conj., *respondeō*, Perf. Stem *respond-*).

Some of these Verbs, however, *prefix* a syllable to the Perfect Stem : thus *curr-*, *cucurr-* ; *pell-*, *pepul-*. This extra syllable is called the 'Reduplication' (= doubling).

Others of these Verbs change the Stem of the Present in some other way ; thus, *lēg-* ('read'), *lēg-* ; *col-lig-* ('collect'), *col-lēg-* ; *vinc-*, *vic-* (here a letter is dropped).

There are other ways in which the Perfect Stem may be formed ; instances will occur in the following sections.

### 39. [Perfects and Pluperfects Passive of the 3rd Conj.]

1. *S.V.B.E.E.V.* See beginning of the letter in § 37.

5. *re-ductae sunt*, 'have been led back,' from *re-dūcō*.

6. *col-lectae*, 'collected,' from *col-ligō*. *diē trīcēsimō*, 'on the 30th.' This way of expressing dates in Latin is far more convenient than the old Latin way (cp. § 37, l. 20 ; § 38, l. 6), and is generally used in Latin letters written at the present day ; for instance, letters sent by Universities and intended to be read all over the world. It will be employed in the rest of this story ; except when a date falls exactly on the 'Kalends' or 'Nones' or 'Ides' of a month, or on the day immediately preceding or following one of these dates (for example, l. 22 below).

7. *com-missum est*, 'was fought,' 'was engaged-in,' from *committō*, 'I let-go together.' The Passive Adj. *commissum* agrees with *proelium*.

10. *in ipsō tempore*, 'at the time itself,' 'at the very time,' 'in the nick of time.'

11. *auxiliō fuērunt*, 'were for an aid,' 'served as an aid' ; cp. on *ūsūi erat*, § 23, l. 17.

13. *nostrōrum*, 'of our-men,' 'of ours' ; cp. *nostri*, § 38, l. 16. *colem*, namely Nicholson's Nek.

14. *missae erant*, 'had been sent,' from *mittō*.

17. *acti*, 'driven,' Nom. Plur. Masc. of the Passive Adjective from *agō*, 'I drive' ; agreeing with *omnēs* (= *omnēs mūlī*).

19. *sē esse vīdērunt*, 'they saw themselves to be' ; *sē* is the Accusative before the Infinitive *esse* ; like *eum* before *reportāvisse* in § 2, l. 10.

20. *circum-dati erant*, 'they had been surrounded,' from *circum-dō*, 1st Conjugation ; see note on § 32, l. 9.

21. *co-acti sunt*, 'were driven (= compelled),' from *cōgō=co-agō*.

22. *Nōnis*, 'on the Nones,' Abl. of Time when. See Vocab.

## 40. [4th Conjugation, Present, Active and Passive.]

2. *audīmus*, 'hear,' with *nōs puerī*; from *audiō*.  
 3. *veniunt*, 'come,' from *veniō*.
4. *custōdiunt-ur*, 'are kept,' from *custōdiō*.
5. *audīre*, 'to hear,' Infinitive.
6. *venit*, 'comes.' The Present Tense is here used with the sense of a Past ('came'), as so often in narrative; cp. *inquit*, 'he says' = 'he said.'
7. *audīte*, 'hear,' Imperative Plural.      *quod* = *id quod*, 'that which,' 'what.'
8. *lēg-ī*, from *legō*, 3rd Conj.; Perfect Stem formed by lengthening the vowel.
9. *custōdiunt*, 'are guarding.'
10. *mūnīre*, 'to fortify,' from *mūniō*.
12. *posu-ērunt*, from *pōnō*, 'I place,' 3rd Conj.; Perfect Stem irregularly formed.

It will be seen that the Present Tense of Verbs of the 4th Conjugation differs from that of the 1st and 2nd Conjugations only in having an *i* instead of an *a* or an *e* in the endings; cp. § 22 (end).

## Fourth Conjugation—Present Tense.

|      | <i>ACTIVE.</i> | <i>PASSIVE</i> (Rule, § 17). |
|------|----------------|------------------------------|
| S. 1 | <i>audiō</i>   | <i>audio-r</i>               |
| 2    | <i>audīs</i>   | <i>audi-ris</i>              |
| 3    | <i>audit</i>   | <i>audit-ur</i>              |
| P. 1 | <i>audīmus</i> | <i>audimū-r</i>              |
| 2    | <i>audītis</i> | <i>audi-minī</i>             |
| 3    | <i>audiunt</i> | <i>audiunt-ur</i>            |

| <i>INFINITIVE ACTIVE.</i> | <i>INFINITIVE PASSIVE.</i> |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>audīre</i>             | <i>audi-rī</i>             |

|      | <i>IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.</i> | <i>IMPERATIVE PASSIVE.</i> |
|------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| S. 2 | <i>audi</i>               |                            |
| P. 2 | <i>audīte</i>             | Not yet learned            |

## 41. [4th Conj., Past Imperf. and Future, Active and Passive.]

3. *veniēbant*, 'were coming,' 'kept coming,' from *veniō*.  
 4. *enim =nam*; but it always stands *after* some other word in the sentence.

5. *audiēbāmus*, 'we heard,' 'we kept hearing'; on this Verb depends the Accusative with Infinitive (*Batāvōs parāre*).  
*mūniēbant*, 'they were fortifying,' from *mūniō*.

7. *nesciēbāmus*, 'we did not know,' from *nesciō*, a Compound of *ne*, 'not,' and *sciō*, 'I know' (whence *scimus*, l. 8).

10. *ad-veniet*, 'will it arrive,' from *ad-veniō* (lit. 'come to').

12. *audiēmus*, 'shall we hear,' from *audiō*.

13. *eustōdīet*, 'will guard,' from *custōdiō*.

16. *pugnābitur*, lit. 'it will be fought' = 'the war will be fought.' A 3rd Person Singular of the Passive Voice is often used without any Noun in the Nominative Case to which it belongs. A Noun of similar meaning to the Verb is understood; thus here *pugnābitur*, 'it will be fought,' means 'the fight will be fought.' The nearest thing in English to this *Passive* construction with a vague subject is the *Active* 'it rains' = 'the rain rains'; 'it thundered and lightened' = 'the thunder thundered and the lightning lightened.'—Cp. § 32, l. 6.

It will be seen that the *i* of the 4th Conjugation Verbs is retained—

- (1) before *ēbam*, *ēbās*, *ēbat*, etc., in the Past Imperfect Tense. Otherwise this Tense is the same as in the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations.  
 (2) before *am*, *ēs*, *et*, etc., in the Future Tense. Otherwise this Tense is the same as in the 3rd Conjugation.

## Fourth Conjugation.

## Past Imperfect.

## Future.

| S. | ACTIVE.    | PASSIVE (§ 17). | ACTIVE.  | PASSIVE (§ 17). |
|----|------------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|
| P. | audiēbam   | audiēba-r       | audiām   | audia-r         |
|    | audiēbās   | audiēbā-ris     | audiēs   | audiē-ris       |
|    | audiēbat   | audiēbāt-ur     | audiēt   | audiēt-ur       |
| 1  | audiēbāmus | audiēbāmu-r     | audiēmus | audiēmu-r       |
|    | audiēbātis | audiēbā-minī    | audiētis | audiē-minī      |
|    | audiēbant  | audiēbant-ur    | audient  | audient-ur      |

42. [Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active, 4th Conjugation.]

4. *audīv-imus*, 'we have heard,' from *audiō*.

6. *ad-vēn-it*, 'it arrived,' from *ad-veniō*, § 41, l. 10.  
*missa est*; cp. *missae erant*, § 39, l. 14.

10. *audīv-ērunt*, 'heard' or 'have heard.' *vocant-em*, 'calling,' Accusative of the Active Adjective formed from the Verb *vocō*, 'I call'; 'heard the country calling' = 'heard their country's call'; cp. § 12, ll. 20, 21.

11. *prīdiē*, 'on the day before,' may take an Accusative (*Kalendās*).

13. *eustōdīv-ērunt*, 'have guarded,' from *custōdiō*, § 40, ll. 4, 9.  
*mūnīrī*, Infinitive, Passive of *mūnīre*, § 40, l. 10.

14. *mūnīv-ērunt*, 'they have fortified.'

16. *com-missum*, Passive Adjective from *com-mittō* (§ 39, l. 7), agreeing with *proelium* (translate 'for the battle fought in front of the town'); cp. § 5, ll. 12, 13; § 15, l. 4.

It will be seen that the Perfect Stem Active of most Verbs of the 4th Conjugation is formed in the same way as that of *spectō* (1st Conj.) and *deleō* (2nd Conj.); cp. *spectāv-*, *dēlēv-*, *audiōv-*. The only difference is that in the 4th Conjugation the vowel before the *v* is *i*.

But there are some Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which do not form the Perfect Stem in this way; for instance, *veniō* forms *vēn-*, without any suffix; cp. *legō*, *lēg-* (3rd Conj.).

Note that in no Conjugation do all verbs form the Perfect Stem in the same way: even in the 1st Conjugation, which is far the simplest, we have *dō*, *ded-* and *stō*, *stet-*.

#### Fourth Conjugation—Tenses formed from the Perfect Stem Active.

|      | <i>PERFECT.</i>    | <i>PLUPERFECT.</i>  | <i>FUTURE PERFECT.</i> |
|------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| S. 1 | <i>audīv-i</i>     | <i>audīv-erām</i>   | <i>audīv-erō</i>       |
|      | <i>audīv-istī</i>  | <i>audīv-erās</i>   | <i>audīv-eris</i>      |
|      | <i>audīv-it</i>    | <i>audīv-erat</i>   | <i>audīv-erit</i>      |
| P. 1 | <i>audīv-imus</i>  | <i>audīv-erāmus</i> | <i>audīv-erimus</i>    |
|      | <i>audīv-istis</i> | <i>audīv-erātis</i> | <i>audīv-eritis</i>    |
|      | <i>audīv-ērunt</i> | <i>audīv-erānt</i>  | <i>audīv-erint</i>     |

*INFINITIVE*  
*audiō-isse*

Similarly conjugate *vēn-i*, *-istī*, *-it*, etc

43. [Verbs in **-iō** with Infinitive in **ēre**, Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

3. **ac-eipiēs**, with *tū*, 'you will re-ceive' ; from *ac-cipiō*, a Compound of *ad* and *capiō* ('I take to myself,' 'I ac-cept,' 'I re-ceive').

5. **audiū-eris**, 'you will have heard,' Future Perfect of *audiō*. **eipiēbam**, 'I desired,' 'I wanted,' from *cipiō*. Note the Past Imperfect Tense, which is here used just as we might use the Past Tense in a similar passage of an English letter. In a similar way we have *scribēbam* in l. 2 and *poteram* in l. 4.

6. **nihil litterārum** ; cp. *quid novī*, § 31, l. 7 ; *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2.

8. **faciētis**, with *tū et condiscipulī tuī*, 'will do' ; from *faciō*. **acciēmus**, 'we shall receive,' from *accipiō*.

9. **capīmus**, with *nōs*, 'we take,' here = 'we feel,' or 'we suffer' ; from *capiō* ; contrast *audīmus* from *audiō*.

11. **capēre**, 'to take,' from *capiō* ; contrast *audīre*, from *audiō*. **eipiunt**, 'they desire,' 'they want,' from *cipiō*.

12. **capient**, 'they will take (it).' *noctēs diēsque* ; see Vocab.

13. **iaciunt**, 'they throw,' from *iaciō* (a different Verb from *iaceō*, § 22, l. 14).

14. **faciunt**, 'they make' ; **facēre**, 'to do' ; both from *faciō*. **dē-fleit**, 'is running short,' from *dē-ficiō* (a Compound of *dē*, 'away,' and *ficiō*).

16. **fodēre**, 'to dig,' from *fodiō*.

17. **sē re-cipiunt** (a Compound of *re-*, 'back,' and *capiō*), 'they be-take themselves.'

18. **inter-ficiunt-ur**, 'are killed,' from *inter-ficiō* (lit. 'I make away with').

It will be seen that Verbs like *capiō*, *cipiō*, *faciō* are conjugated in the Past Imperfect and Future Tenses exactly like *audiō* ; that is, according to the 4th Conjugation. In the Present Tense the 1st Person Singular and the 3rd Person Plural are also according to the 4th Conjugation ; and the other Persons of this Tense differ from the 4th Conjugation only in having a short *i* where the 4th Conjugation has a long *i*. But in the Infinitive these verbs have the endings of the 3rd Conjugation (Active, *-ēre*, not *-ire* ; Passive, *-i*, not *-irī*). So too in the Imperative,

## PREPARATIONS

Verbs in **-iō** with Infinitive in **-ere**—Pres., Past Imperf., Future.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

|      | <i>PRESENT.</i> | <i>PAST IMPERFECT.</i> | <i>FUTURE.</i> |
|------|-----------------|------------------------|----------------|
| S. I | capiō           | capiēbam               | capiam         |
|      | 2 capis *       | capiēbās               | capiēs         |
|      | 3 capit         | capiēbat               | capiet         |
| P. I | capimus *       | capiēbāmus             | capiēmus       |
|      | 2 capitis *     | capiēbātis             | capiētis       |
|      | 3 capiunt       | capiēbānt              | capiēnt        |

| <i>INFINITIVE.</i> |      | <i>IMPERATIVE.</i> |
|--------------------|------|--------------------|
| capēre *           | S. 2 | capē *             |
|                    | P. 2 | capite *           |

## PASSIVE VOICE. (Rule § 17.)

|      | <i>PRESENT.</i> | <i>PAST IMPERFECT.</i> | <i>FUTURE.</i> |
|------|-----------------|------------------------|----------------|
| S. I | capiō-r         | capiēba-r              | capia-r        |
|      | 2 capē-ris *    | capiēbā-ris            | capiē-ris      |
|      | 3 capit-ur      | capiēbāt-ur            | capiēt-ur      |
| P. I | capimu-r *      | capiēbāmu-r            | capiēmu-r      |
|      | 2 capi-minī *   | capiēbā-minī           | capiē-minī     |
|      | 3 capiunt-ur    | capiēbānt-ur           | capiēnt-ur     |

| <i>INFINITIVE.</i> |      | <i>IMPERATIVE.</i> |
|--------------------|------|--------------------|
| capī *     S. 2    |      | Not yet learned    |
|                    | P. 2 |                    |

44. [Perfect Stem Active of Verbs in **-iō** with Infinitive in **-ere**.]

1. *hōs*, 'these' = 'the last.'

3. *ac-cēp-imus*, 'we have re-ceived,' from *ac-cipiō*.

8, 9. 'These the Dutch had settled-on, like eagles on their nests'; *in-sēderant* comes from *in-sidō*, 3rd Conj. (which is derived from *sedeō*, 2nd Conj.).

\* These forms are the same as in the 3rd Conjugation.

11. *fēc-ērunt*, 'made,' from *faciō*. *cēp-ērunt*, 'took,' from *capiō*.  
 12. *con-iēc-ērunt*, 'threw,' from *con-iciō* (less correctly spelled *con-iiciō*), which is a Compound of *con* and *iaciō*, § 43, l. 13.  
 15. *in-cēp-ērunt*, 'they began,' from *in-cipiō* (lit. 'I take on').  
 17. *fōd-erat*, 'had dug,' from *fodiō*, § 43, l. 16.  
 19. *pugnātum est*, 'it was fought' = 'a battle was fought'; see note on *pugnābitur*, § 41, l. 16.

20, 22. *inter-fēc-ērunt*, 'killed,' from *inter-ficiō*. *sē trā-iēc-ērunt*, 'threw themselves across' = 'crossed'; *trā-* = *trans*.

23. *sē re-cēp-ērunt*; cp. *sē re-cipiunt*, § 43, l. 17.

The dates of the battles referred to are Nov. 23rd (Belmont), Nov. 25th (Graspan or Enslin), Nov. 28th (Modder River).

It will be seen that *capiō*, *faciō*, *iaciō* and *fodiō* form their Perfect Stems without any suffix, and with a lengthened vowel, *cēp-*, *fēc-*, *iēc-*, *fōd-*. *Cupiō*, on the other hand, forms the Perf. St. *cupiū-* (like *audiū-*, from *audiō*).

† 45. 5. *lēgātus Britannicus*, Lord Methuen.

7. *sicut Britannīs antiquīs*, 'just-as to the ancient Britons.' Caesar tells us that the Britons were not accustomed to fight regular battles in the Roman style.

9, 10. Cp. O.M. § 37 (about the British charioteers).

11. *vīgintī tantum*; cp. *duo tantum vel tria*, § 24, l. 14.

16. *Batāvus*, 'the Dutchman' = 'the Dutch general,' here Cronje.

18. *acceptā*, Pass. Adj., from *acciopiō*, agreeing with *clāde*.

† 46. 4. *con-spicit-ur*, 'is discerned,' from *con-spiciō*.

7. *lēgātō*, General Wauchope.

8. *iacu-ērunt*, from *iaceō*; contrast *iēc-ērunt* from *iaciō*.

11. *perturbātī sunt*, 'were thrown into disorder'; Perf. Pass. *alius super alium*, 'other over other' = 'one over the other.'

13, 14. *ut poterant*; cp. *ut poterāmus*, § 38, l. 5.

18, 19. *alius exercitus*, commanded by General Gatacre. The disaster of Stormberg occurred early on the morning of Dec. 10th. *ad*; cp. § 38, l. 7.

21. *eōrum*, neuter, 'of those things,'

- † 47. 5. *imperātor noster*; see § 42, ll. 10, 11.  
 6. *mūlia*, in apposition to *exercitus*.  
 13. *legiō*, here 'brigade' (of the British army); see Vocab.  
 20. *nostrōrum*; cp. § 39, l. 13.

#### 48. [Present Injunctive of 'sum.']}

1. *Ante paucōs diēs*, 'before a few days' = 'a few days ago.' [Abhinc is not used with *diēs*.]

7. *septem et sexāgintā annōs nātus*, 'born sixty-seven years' = 'sixty-seven years old.'

8. *ad*; cp. § 38, l. 7.      *ce-cid-it*, from *cadō*.

9. *facit*. The Present Tense is often thus used after *dum*, instead of the Past Imperfect.

11. *sit*, 'may there be.'

13. *poēta Rōmānus*: Plautus, in his play called 'The Persian' (iv. 4, 73).

14. 'The Cape of Storms,' so called by its first discoverer in 1486—a Portuguese named Diaz.

18. *quantum*, Accus. of *quantus*, which means 'how great,' but may be translated 'as' after *tantus* 'so great' (l. 17).

18, f. *quod prō-sit*, 'may which-thing be helpful' = 'and may it be helpful.' The verb *prō-sum* means literally 'I am for,' 'I am on-the-side-of,' and takes the Dative Case (*reīpublicae nostrae*).

It will be seen that *sit* differs from *est* in the same way as 'be' differs from 'is' in English; cp. 'it is so' with 'be it so' or 'so be it.' *Est* and 'is' express a fact; *sit* and 'be' express a desire or command. They are therefore very like Imperatives in meaning. We may call them 'Injunctives,' understanding by that name a form of the verb which 'enjoins' or expresses an 'injunction'; for an injunction is very much the same as a command.

Injunctive forms exist in all Persons, Singular and Plural, and in several different Tenses. The whole group of injunctive forms might be called an 'Injunctive Mood'; just as the whole group of imperative forms is called the 'Imperative Mood,' and the whole group of forms which state facts is called the 'Indicative (=indicating) Mood.' But the Mood here called 'Injunctive' is commonly called 'the Subjunctive Mood' from a use of it explained below (§ 50).

## Present Injunctive of 'sum.'

|    |   |        |                    |
|----|---|--------|--------------------|
| S. | 1 | sim,   | <i>may I be</i>    |
|    | 2 | sīs,   | <i>may you be</i>  |
|    | 3 | sit,   | <i>may he be</i>   |
| P. | 1 | simus, | <i>may we be</i>   |
|    | 2 | sītis, | <i>may you be</i>  |
|    | 3 | sint,  | <i>may they be</i> |

The Present Injunctive of *pos-sum* is formed by adding the above forms to *pos-*: thus *pos-sim*, 'may I be able,' etc.

## 49. [Present Injunctive of the 1st Conjugation.]

2. *nihil novī*; cp. *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2; and § 43, l. 6.

3. *prope* is here an Adverb; 'nearly,' 'almost.'

6. *pugnēmus*, 'let us fight'; cp. § 36, l. 15 f., *etiam atque etiam pugnābimus* ('we shall fight'). The Injunctive is rather like a Future Indicative in meaning, though there is a difference. Think what is the exact meaning of 'We'll (= we will) fight and we'll conquer'; is it more like 'we shall fight' or 'let us fight'? *vic-erimus* is a Future Perfect Indicative, 'we shall have conquered.'

7. *Deus det*, 'may God give (or grant).' *Nē dēspērēmus*, 'let us not despair,' from *dēspērō*. Note that 'not' with Injunctives is *nē* (instead of *nōn*).

8. *festinēmus lente*, 'let us hurry slowly,' 'steady, boys, steady!'; cp. *Festinā* (Imperative) *lente*, 'hurry slowly,' 'not too fast!'; O.M. § 21. *fēcit*, 'did' (= hurried slowly); the verb *faciō* is often used in Latin, like 'do' in English, to avoid repeating a verb.

9. *poēta Rōmānus*, Ennius; see § 38, l. 3 and l. 2.

10. *cunctandō*, 'by delaying,' the Ablative of a Noun in *-ndum* formed from a Verb; cp. *spectandī* (Gen.), § 6, l. 4, etc.

*nōbis*, 'for us' (Dative), with *restituit*. *rem=rempublicam* (§ 31, l. 21). Fabius Maximus was called *Cunctātor*, 'the Delayer,' because he avoided fighting the enemy in pitched battles; he thus saved the Roman Republic when it was nearly overthrown by Hannibal.

12. *ūnius et māioris populi* goes with *corpus*, 'the body of one and a greater nation.'

14, 15. Lines by Dr. J. E. Sandys, Public Orator in the University of Cambridge, on presenting the Hon. E. Barton, of New South Wales, for a Doctor's degree (May 10th, 1900). *estō*, l. 15, is an Imperative of *sum*, 3rd Pers. Sing., and means 'be' (which meaning might also be expressed by the Injunctive *sit*) ; *estō foedus*, 'be there a league,' or 'let there be a league.' *omnis = tōtūs*, 'of the whole.'

The metre is 'trochaic,' like that of Tennyson's *Locksley Hall* :—  
"Comrades, leáve me hére a little, | while as yét 'tis eárly mórn."

17. *cui*, 'for which,' may here be translated 'on which' after *occidit*. From *occidēre*, 'to set,' comes *occidens*, 'the setting' (properly 'the setting sun') = 'the West.'

18, 19. *maximam laudem . . . posse*, 'judge it to be the greatest praise to themselves to be able to say.'

20, 21. Lines by Dr. Sandys (June 17, 1897); a translation of Rudyard Kipling's line—

"I am daughter in my mother's house, but mistress in my own."

The metre is trochaic, like the second half of the lines of *Locksley Hall*—"while as yét 'tis eárly mórn."

22-26.. The numbers here mentioned were largely increased afterwards.

25. *nātū*, from *nātus*, 4th Decl. See Vocab.

27. *qui* = *eī qui*, 'those who'; cp. *quod* = *id quod*, § 40, l. 7. In English, too, 'who' sometimes means 'he who'; thus, 'Who steals my purse, steals trash' (Shakspere, *Othello*). The metre of the line of Horace is dactylic; cp. on § 30, l. 10.

29. *Deus salvam prae-stet*, 'may God render safe' = 'God save.' Notice that 'God save the Queen' may also be translated by an Imperative in Latin: *Deus salvam fac* (Imperative of *faciō*) *Rēgīnam*, lit. 'God make safe the Queen.' The English 'save' in 'God save' is an Injunctive.

## Present Injunctive of the First Conjugation.

|       |           |   |
|-------|-----------|---|
| S. 1. | pugnem,   | <i>may I fight or let me fight</i>      |
| 2.    | pugnēs,   | <i>may you fight</i>                    |
| 3.    | pugnet,   | <i>may he fight or let him fight</i>    |
| P. 1. | pugnēmus, | <i>may we fight or let us fight</i>     |
| 2.    | pugnētis, | <i>may you fight</i>                    |
| 3.    | pugnent,  | <i>may they fight or let them fight</i> |

From Active Injunctives may be formed Passives. Thus—

|      |           | ACTIVE.                | PASSIVE (Rule. § 17).                |
|------|-----------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1 | spectem,  | <i>may I see, etc.</i> | specte-r, <i>may I be seen, etc.</i> |
| 2    | spectēs   |                        | spectē-ris                           |
| 3    | spectet   |                        | spectēt-ur                           |
| P. 1 | spectēmus |                        | spectēmu-r                           |
| 2    | spectētis |                        | spectē-minī                          |
| 3    | spectent  |                        | spectent-ur                          |

50. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation.]

4. *ut . . . expugnent*, 'that they may storm,' depending on *operam dant*: notice *ut* = 'that'; hitherto we have had it only in the sense 'as' (which occurs also below, l. 14), or 'how.' *vī*, from *vīs*, an irregular Noun; see Vocab.

5. *quō . . . dent*, 'on which they may deliver,' depending on *diem constituunt*. This Subordinate Clause introduced by *quō* is very like the independent sentence introduced by *Quod* in § 48, l. 18.

10. *pugnātur*; cp. *pugnābitur*, § 41, l. 16, *pugnātum est*, § 44, l. 19.

The Present Tense in this passage (ll. 7–12) refers to past time.

11. *ut sōl obscūrētur*, 'that the sun is darkened,' depending on *tantus*.

12. *ut prōpulsent*, 'that they repel,' depending on *tam ācrem*.

13. *et (ut, understood) salva praestent*, 'and (that) they render safe.'

17. *victitant*, 'they live'; 'they' = 'the inhabitants.'

18. *lāc*, 'milk,' which is so necessary for invalids.

19. *dēnāriīs vīgintī con-stant*, lit. 'stand at 20/-' = 'cost 20/-.' For the Abl. in this sense, cp. O.M. § 9, *magnō pretiō vēnumdant*.

22. *ut . . . explōrent-ur*, 'that what is being done among the enemy may be investigated': *quae=ea quae*, 'those things which'; cp. § 49, l. 27, and contrast § 46, l. 21, *eōrum quae apud nōs agēbantur*.

25. *ut spectent*, 'that (or in order that) they may see.'

25, 26. *ita . . . ut . . . applicētur*, 'in such a way that it may be brought.' *sī sit*, 'if it be.'

It will be seen that the 'Subjunctives' of this section do not differ *in form* from the 'Injunctives' of §§ 48, 49; that is, the same words (*sim*, *sīs*, *sit*, etc., *pugnem*, *pugnēs*, *pugnet*, etc.) may be used either as 'Injunctives' or as 'Subjunctives.' The name Subjunctive is here given to an Injunctive when it stands in a Subordinate Clause.\* But there is also a difference of meaning, which in some cases is important:

(1) Instead of 'may I,' 'may you,' 'may he,' etc., the Subjunctive is translated 'I may,' 'you may,' 'he may,' etc.

(2) In some cases the meaning 'may' seems to disappear altogether; see l. 11, *obscūrētur*, 'is darkened'; l. 12, *prōpulsent*, 'they repel'; l. 13, *praestent*, 'they render.' [At first sight it is difficult to see why Subjunctives are used in these sentences at all; they seem not to differ in meaning from Indicatives. Perhaps *applicētur* in l. 26 may help to explain the difficulty; it means 'may be brought,' but it might be translated 'is brought.' Similarly *ut prōpulsent* (l. 12) means properly 'as to repel,' rather than 'that they repel'; *ut sōl obscūrētur* (l. 11) is rather more difficult, because it is Passive, but we may translate 'as for the sun to be darkened'; and this '*for* the sun to be darkened' is not so very different from 'that the sun *may* be darkened.'] †

\* The word 'Sub-junctive' in itself means nothing more than 'sub-joining,' as though the Subjunctive Mood were the Mood of subjoined or sub-ordinate clauses. But it is best to understand it as short for 'Sub-injunctive'; that is, 'Subordinate Injunctive.'

† This attempt to explain the Subjunctive in Clauses denoting Result may be omitted, if too difficult of comprehension for the pupil. He will then have to regard the Subjunctive in such Clauses as having no special meaning, and as a merely formal substitute for the Indicative.

- † 51. 3. *imperātor novus*, Lord Roberts ; § 48, l. 2.  
*vincere scit*, 'knows how to conquer,' lit. 'knows to conquer.'
- 4–14. The Present Tense refers to past time ; cp. § 50, ll. 7–12.
4. *Caledonēs*, = 'Highland regiments.'
- 4, 5. *qui dent*, 'who shall deliver' = 'to deliver.'
6. *equitum Anglōrum*, etc : under General French.
- 6, 7. *ut equitent*, 'that they shall ride' = 'to ride.'
13. *soliō densiōrem*, 'denser than usual.' In this phrase the Ablative of the Adjective *solitus* means 'than.'
17. *Salvi sītis!* a common form of greeting, lit. 'may you be safe-and-sound!' = 'good day to you.'
- 19, 20. *ut liberēmus*, 'that (or in order that) we may set-free' = 'to (or in order to) set-free.' The proper English, however, for the phrase *oppidum obsidiōne liberāre* (lit. 'to set-free a town from siege') will be found in the Vocab.      *Deō sit grātia*, 'thanks be to God,' 'thank God.'
- 22, 23. *nōmine Adamantopolis* (Gen.), 'the name of A.' ; cp. *nomen Germanōrum*, § 34, l. 19.      *adamanta movēre*, 'to move adamant,' means to bend a thing that is inflexible. *Adamanta* is the Greek Accusative of the Greek word *adamas* (*adamant-*).
- It will be seen that Subjunctives and Injunctives may often be translated by the word 'shall' in English ; and *ut* or *qui* followed by a Subjunctive may be conveniently translated by the Infinitive with 'to,' or 'in order to' ; see lines 4, 5, 6, 7, 19, 20 above.
52. [Present Injunetive and Subjunetive of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.]
2. *liberātā*, agreeing with *Adamantopoli* (Ablative).
4. *nulla mora* ; that is, he is not a *Cunctātor*, like the Roman Q. Fabius Maximus, § 49, l. 8.      *Noster* = 'our general.'
- 5, 6. *qui oppugnant*, like *qui dent*, § 51, ll. 4, 5.
- 6–8. *dum equitēs eum itinere prohibeant*, 'while the cavalry shall prevent him from the march (= from marching).'      *ā septen-triōnibus*, 'on the North.'
8. *videat imperātor noster*, 'let our general see-to-it.'
- 9, 10. *nē . . . capiat*, 'that the State shall suffer no harm' ; *nē* here = *ut nē*, 'that not' or 'lest' ; cp. the *nē* in § 49, l. 7, n̄ *dēspērēmus*.      *quid dētrimenti* ; cp. *quid novī*, § 31, l. 7. For *capiō* = 'suffer,' see § 43, l. 9.

10. *anxia*, fem. of *anxius*; because 'I' is here a woman.

14. *Deus avertat*, 'may God avert.'      *prohibeat nē*, literally 'may he prevent that . . . not,' or 'may he prevent lest': but the meaning is 'God forbid that.' It is a special idiom in Latin to use *nē* instead of *ut* after *prohibeō*, as though the Subordinate Clause were a separate sentence (*Nē sit hīc diēs āter*, 'let not this day be a black one').

15, 16. *Det ut vineāmus*, 'may he grant that we may conquer.'

16, 17. *ut salūtem dicam*, 'that I send greeting,' depending on *rogat*.      *ut valeās*, 'that you be-well,' depending on *cūrā*, 'take care.' Note that the Latin Subjunctive is here translated by an English Subjunctive, instead of by 'may,' 'let,' or 'shall.'

It will be seen that the Present Injunctives of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conjugation have an *a* in the ending; whereas in the 1st Conjugation the Present Injunctive has an *e*.

#### Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.

| ACTIVE VOICE. |           |           |           |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|               | 2nd CONJ. | 3rd CONJ. | 4th CONJ. |
| S. 1          | habeam    | mittam    | audiam    |
|               | habeās    | mittās    | audiās    |
|               | habeāt    | mittat    | audiat    |
| P. 1          | habeāmus  | mittāmus  | audiāmus  |
|               | habeātis  | mittātis  | audiātis  |
|               | habeant   | mittant   | audiant   |

| PASSIVE VOICE (Rule, § 17). |            |            |            |
|-----------------------------|------------|------------|------------|
|                             | 2nd CONJ.  | 3rd CONJ.  | 4th CONJ.  |
| S. 1                        | habea-r    | mitta-r    | audia-r    |
|                             | habeā-ris  | mittā-ris  | audiā-ris  |
|                             | habeāt-ur  | mittāt-ur  | audiāt-ur  |
| P. 1                        | habeāmu-r  | mittāmu-r  | audiāmu-r  |
|                             | habeā-minī | mittā-minī | audiā-minī |
|                             | habeant-ur | mittant-ur | audiant-ur |

Verbs in *-iō* with Infinitive in *-ere* (like *capiō*, *capere*) form the Present Injunctive according to the 4th Conjugation: *capiam*, *capiās*, *capiat*, etc.

## 53. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of 'sum.']}

4. *vēnit, vīdit, vīcit*, 'came, saw and conquered.' *Vēni, vīdi*, *vīci* was what Caesar wrote in one of his despatches.

7. *in quibus sūi tūtū essent*, 'in which his-men should be safe'; cp. § 52, ll. 5, 6.

8. *nē pos-set*, 'that he might not be able'; *pos-set* = *pot-esset*.

11-13. *ita . . . ut . . . ab-essent*, 'in such a way that they should be distant'; cp. § 50, l. 25, 26, *ita . . . ut . . . applicētur*.

15, 16. *salūtem dēspērāvit*, 'despaired-of deliverance'; see Vocab.

17. *dē-didit*, Perfect of *dē-dō*; cp. *con-didērunt*, § 35, l. 7. *Diēs Maiūbensis*, Feb. 27th; see § 52, l. 10.

18. *Colōnia* = Cape Colony, as in § 38, l. 23.

23. *properandō*, 'by hastening,' 'by acting rapidly'; cp. § 49, l. 10.

It will be seen that the Past Imperfect Subjunctive differs from the Present Subjunctive just as 'should' differs from 'shall,' or 'might' from 'may.'

## Past Imperfect Subjunctive of 'sum.'

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| S. 1. <i>essem</i> ,   | <i>I should be, or I might be</i>       |
| 2. <i>essēs</i> ,      | <i>you should be, or you might be</i>   |
| 3. <i>esset</i> ,      | <i>he should be, or he might be</i>     |
| P. 1. <i>essēmus</i> , | <i>we should be, or we might be</i>     |
| 2. <i>essētis</i> ,    | <i>you should be, or you might be</i>   |
| 3. <i>essent</i> ,     | <i>they should be, or they might be</i> |

The Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *pos-sum* is formed by adding *-sem*, *-sēs*, *-set*, *-sēmus*, *-sētis*, *-sent* to *pos-*.

## 54. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of the 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.]

2. *Fabius ille noster*, 'that Fabius of ours,' General Sir Redvers Buller.

3. *ut liberāret*, lit. 'that he might set-free' = 'to set-free,' depending on *operam dabat* (Past Imperfect); cp. § 50, l. 4, *ut expugnat*, depending on *operam dat* (Present). *bis*: in the neighbourhood of Spion Kop and of Vaalkrantz.

4. *trā-iēcerat*, 'he had crossed'; much commoner than *sē trā-iēcerat*, 'he had thrown himself across,' § 44, l. 22. *ut locō movēret*, 'that he might dislodge' (lit. 'move from the place').

5. *et (ut understood) facēret*, 'and might make.'

6. *ut re-dūcēret*, lit. 'that he should lead back' = 'to lead back.' *Cōgō* may also take the Infinitive in Latin, as in § 39, l. 21, *coactī sunt sē dēdere*.

9. *ut pauci facile prohibērent*, 'that a few men easily prevented,' depending on *tam altōs*, 'so high'; we might translate 'high enough for . . . to prevent.'

11, 12. *ut . . . tolerārent*, 'as to endure.'

13. (*ut understood*) . . . *ascendārent*, '(as) to ascend.'

14. (*ut understood*) . . . *capērent*, '(as) to seize.' (*ut*) . . . *sus-tinērent*, '(as) to sus-tain,' 'as to face.'

16. *red-didit*, Perfect of *red-dō*; like *dē-didit*, *con-didit*.

16, 17. *ut omnēs hominēs . . . audirent lūdīcārentque*, 'so that all men heard . . . and judged.'

19. *pro-fūd-isse*, Perfect Infinitive of *pro-fundō*. *ter*, including the first attempt at the battle of Colenso, § 47.

20. *ut . . . pellārent*, 'that they might drive,' 'to drive,' depending on *contenderant*; cp. *viam facere* (Infin.) *contenderunt*, § 46, l. 14.

22. *ut . . . pugnārent*, 'that they should fight' = 'to fight,' depending on *constitu-ērunt*, 'they resolved.' *dōnec vincērent*, 'until they should conquer.'

#### Past Imperfect Subjunctive.

| ACTIVE VOICE. |                    |                  |                   |                  |
|---------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
|               | 1st CONJ.          | 2nd CONJ.        | 3rd CONJ.         | 4th CONJ.        |
| S. 1          | <i>spectārem</i>   | <i>habērem</i>   | <i>mittērem</i>   | <i>audīrem</i>   |
|               | <i>spectārēs</i>   | <i>habērēs</i>   | <i>mittērēs</i>   | <i>audīrēs</i>   |
|               | <i>spectāret</i>   | <i>habēret</i>   | <i>mittēret</i>   | <i>audīret</i>   |
| P. 1          | <i>spectārēmus</i> | <i>habērēmus</i> | <i>mittērēmus</i> | <i>audīrēmus</i> |
|               | <i>spectārētis</i> | <i>habērētis</i> | <i>mittērētis</i> | <i>audīrētis</i> |
|               | <i>spectārent</i>  | <i>habērent</i>  | <i>mittērent</i>  | <i>audīrent</i>  |

## PASSIVE VOICE (Rule, § 17).

|      | 1st CONJ.     | 2nd CONJ.   | 3rd CONJ.    | 4th CONJ.   |
|------|---------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| S. I | spectāre-r    | habēre-r    | mittēre-r    | audīre-r    |
|      | spectārē-ris  | habērē-ris  | mittērē-ris  | audirē-ris  |
|      | spectārēt-ur  | habērēt-ur  | mittērēt-ur  | audirēt-ur  |
| P. I | spectārēmu-r  | habērēmu-r  | mittērēmu-r  | audirēmu-r  |
|      | spectārē-mīnī | habērē-mīnī | mittērē-mīnī | audirē-mīnī |
|      | spectārent-ur | habērent-ur | mittērent-ur | audirent-ur |

Verbs in *-iō* with Infinitive in *-ēre* (like *capiō*, *capēre*) form the Past Imperfect Subjunctive according to the 3rd Conjugation: *capērem*, *capērēs*, *capēret*, etc. Contrast the Present Subjunctive of these Verbs (according to the 4th Conjugation, § 52, end).

† 55. 1. 2. *alterō et vīcēsimō*, 'and and 20th' = '22nd.'

14. *ō diem pulchrum*, 'oh the glorious day!' ; cp. § 37, l. 7.

16. *lux*, 'light' = 'hope,' 'joy.' *af-ful-s-it*, 'shone,' 'dawned,' Perfect of *af-fulgeō*, which takes the Dative (*oppidō illī*, 'upon that town').

18. *quō . . . essēmus* ; cp. *in quibus essent*, § 53, l. 7.

21. *fabricāta*, Passive Adj. from *fabricō*, agreeing with *insignia*.

† 56.\* *Pax Britannica* ; cp. *Pax Rōmāna*, § 14.

2. *sunt ex quō* ; like § 25, ll. 5, 6, *fuerant ex quō*.

6. *Praetōriæ*, *in ipsō capite* ; like § 25, l. 16, *Durovernī*, *in capite*.

7, 8. *vōs* (Accus.) *gaudēre* (Infin.), depending on *sciō*.

8-10. *nōs* (Accus.) *triumphāre* (Infin.), depending on *putātis*.

21. *dux fortissime* : Colonel (now Major-General) Baden-Powell.

23. *quod agās*, 'what (or whatsoever) you shall do' ; *quod* = *id quod*.

26. *pugnant-ēs*, Active Adjective from *pugnō*, agreeing with *qui*.

35. *facinus ēgregium et audax*, 'an act of great gallantry.'

\* This long letter (No. 56) is intended to be broken up into several lessons, according to convenience. As it contains no new grammatical features, some teachers may prefer to run over it rapidly.

37. A.S. = *Annō Salūtis*, 'in the year of Grace'; cp. l. 83.
39. Take *prō patriā pugnant-em*, 'fighting for one's country,' with *vītam exspirāre* = 'to die.'
53. *illud*, 'that,' referring to *principātus Britannicus*, but agreeing (according to a common idiom) with *patrōcīnium*, 'protectorate.'
- 54–58. The skeleton of this long sentence is *Videāmus nē* (55) *turpissimum sit* (57) *nōn posse* (58). Cp. § 52, ll. 8, 9, *videat . . . nē . . . capiat*. *turpissimum sit*, 'it may be a most inglorious thing.' After *nōn posse* take *obtinēre et conservāre*, and then *id quod accepimus*. The words from *ut* to *sīc* (55, 56) may be left out till the rest of the sentence has been translated: *ut* = 'as,' and *sīc*, 'so'; *pulcherrimum fuit*, 'it was a most glorious thing'; *tantam* goes with *glōriam*; and *nōbis* is Dative after *trādere*.
58. *Illud*, 'that,' 'the following thing,' points on to *quod*, 'that,' l. 59.
- 61, 62. *Batāvīs licet*, 'it is allowed to (or lawful for) the Dutch,' *esse*, 'to be,' *cīvibus Britannicīs*, 'British subjects.' *Licet*, like *piget* and *oportet*, can only be used in the 3rd Person.
65. *ut . . . dīcere possit*, 'that he shall be able to say' = 'to be able to say'; cp. § 49, ll. 18, 19, *dīcere posse*.
67. A line of a poet of the fifth century A.D. (Claudius Ru-tilius Namatianus); metre, dactylic.
68. *quae . . . ea = ea quae*.
- 70–75. Lines of Claudian, a poet of the fourth century A.D. [De Consulatu Stilichonis, iii. 150 fol.], in dactylic metre.
70. *Haec est quae*, 'She it is who.'
73. *quōs = eōs quōs*; 'has called those whom she has conquered citizens.'
- 74, 75. *dēbēmus quod*, 'we owe it that.'      *gens ūna*, 'one family' or 'one nation.'
76. *Camillus*, the great Roman statesman of the fourth century B.C., who built a temple to Concord in honour of the reconciliation of the Patricians and the Plebeians.
78. *in-scribāntur*, 'shall be inscribed.'
- 80, 81. Lines of Statius, a poet of the first century A.D. [Thebaid, xii. 573 f.]. *estō*, 'granted,' lit. 'be it so'; cp. § 49, l. 15. *ce-cid-ēre* is a poetical form of *ce-cid-ērunt*, from *cadō*; cp. § 48, l. 8.

## EXERCISES & CONVERSATIONS.

i. [Adjectives of the 3rd Declension in —, *is*, *e.*]

### (A) Conversation.

[The questions in this and similar Conversations are supposed to be asked by the teacher, and the answers to be given by the pupil, except where the contrary is indicated.]

Ubi est villa patrui tui ?

Villa patrui mei in Cantio, inter Dubras et Rutupias, sita est.

Cur non apud patrem tuum nunc es ?

Quia pater meus in Africa Meridiana habitat.

Patruusne tuus tibi loco parentis est ?

Ita est. Inter ferias apud patrum meum sum.

Ubi eris post finem mensis Septembris ?

Post finem feriarum apud magistrum meum, ad Ventam Belgarum ero.

Ubi habitant amici tui, Marcus et Alexander ?

Amici mei prope Dubras habitant.

Quid nunc lectitas ?

Vitam Agricolae nunc lectito. Agricola dux celeber primo saeculo post Christum natum fuit.

(B) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘the month of September’ in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for ‘the 1st of September’ in all Cases of the Plural.

(C) It is the month of September. After the month of September I shall be in-the-house-of my schoolmaster. In<sup>1</sup> the month of October I shall give many hours every-day to lessons. Before the end of the month of December there-will-be holidays. I am now reading about Agricola, the famous<sup>2</sup> general of the Romans. The lives of famous generals delight me much. I like to<sup>3</sup> read about famous generals and about our famous island. In<sup>1</sup> the times of Agricola our island was not famous.

<sup>1</sup> ‘Time when’ is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition, as in O.M. (*Ora Maritima*) § 10, *secundō saeculō*, ‘in the 2nd century.’

<sup>2</sup> Use *celeber*, *celebris*, *celebre* for ‘famous’ throughout this exercise.—In what Case must ‘the famous general’ be? Think of the meaning (‘about the famous general’), and compare Preparations § 1, l. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Say, ‘I gladly (*libenter*) read,’ and so wherever ‘I like to —’ occurs in these exercises.

(D) In the times of Romulus, the first king<sup>1</sup> of the Romans, there were only ten months in the Roman year. The name of the first month was *Martius*, of the second *Aprilis*, of the third *Mäius*, of the fourth *Iunius*, of the fifth *Quintilis*, of the sixth *Sextilis*, of the seventh *September*, of the eighth *Octöber*, of the ninth *November*, of the tenth *December*.

(E) But Numa, the second king, gave two new months to the year. He called the first *Iānuārius*,<sup>2</sup> and the second *Februārius*. After the times of Gaius Julius Caesar the Romans used to call the seventh month *Iūlius*; and after the times of Augustus, the first emperor,<sup>1</sup> they used to call the eighth month *Augustus*.

2. [*is*, *ea*, *id*—Singular Number.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘that emperor,’ ‘that island,’ ‘that name,’ in all Cases of the Singular.

In the following exercises of this section translate ‘he,’ ‘him,’ ‘his’ by Cases of *is* (‘that-one’—‘that-man’), and ‘she,’ ‘her,’ ‘her’ by Cases of *ea* (‘that-one’—‘that woman’).

(B) Gaius Julius Caesar was the first conqueror of Britain. My uncle has told me<sup>3</sup> about him. Tacitus mentions his victory in the Life of Agricola. That book tells about another<sup>4</sup> conqueror of Britain. His name was Agricola. He was-in-command-of<sup>5</sup> Britain during<sup>6</sup> seven years.

(C) The Emperor Vespasianus created him general of the Roman forces in the year 78 A.D.,<sup>7</sup> and gave him<sup>8</sup> great forces.

<sup>1</sup> In what Case must ‘the first king’ be? The meaning is ‘in the time of the first king.’ Compare C, note 2 above.

<sup>2</sup> The word *Iānuārius* must agree in Case with the word ‘first’ (—the first month). Similarly *Februārius*.

<sup>3</sup> Say ‘to me’ (Dative Case).

<sup>4</sup> Use *alius*, which is regular in most of its Cases.

<sup>5</sup> Use *prae-sum*, which takes the Dative Case. See O.M. § 40: *ubi quattuor rēgēs Britannis prae-erant* (‘were-in-command-of the Britons,’ or ‘were-commanders to the Britons’).

<sup>6</sup> Use *per*.

<sup>7</sup> Wherever the letters A.D. (—*Anno Domini*) occur in these exercises say *post Christum nātum*; and wherever the letters B.C. (—before Christ) occur, say *ante Christum nātum*. And in each case say ‘in the 78th year’ (instead of ‘in the year 78’), ‘in the 55th year’ (instead of ‘in the year 55’), and so forth.

<sup>8</sup> What Case? Think of the meaning (‘him’ here—‘to him’).

His daughter was the wife of Tacitus. Her<sup>1</sup> name was Julia. Tacitus loved her much, and gives her great glory in the book about Agricola.

(D) In the month of August my uncle had told us (*Dat.*) about the expeditions of C. Julius Caesar against Britain. He transported the Roman forces into Britain in the year 55 B.C. and won a victory over<sup>2</sup> the southern Britons. One cause of that expedition was the expectation of booty. In the next year Caesar prepared a second and greater expedition, and won a second victory. But that victory too was not great. Tacitus does not praise it.<sup>3</sup>

3. [*is, ea, id*—Plural Number.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for ‘those emperors,’ ‘those islands,’ ‘those names,’ in all Cases of the Plural.

In the following exercises of this section translate ‘they,’ ‘them,’ ‘their’ by Cases of *ei, eae, ea*.

(B) Accordingly after those victories of C. Julius Caesar the Britons were free, as they had been before them.<sup>4</sup> The midland Britons had not fought against Caesar. Caesar did not subdue them. The Romans had not sold their children into slavery. The father of Cunobelinus was their king in the first century B.C.

(C) The name of that king was Tasciovanus. His son was Cunobelinus. The names of those kings were famous through the whole island. Cunobelinus was king not only of the midland Britons, but also of the southern Britons. He had united them into one people. Some<sup>5</sup> of those tribes were Celts, but some of them were Germans or Belgians. The name of their city stands on coins of that age.

4. [*is, ea, id*—continued.]

(A) *Conversation*.  
Quis fuit pater Cunobelini?

<sup>1</sup> Say ‘of that-woman’ (Genitive of *ea*).

<sup>2</sup> Say ‘from.’

<sup>3</sup> ‘It’ means *that victory*. What, then, must be the Gender of the Pronoun in Latin?

<sup>4</sup> ‘Them’ means *those victories*. What Gender, then, in Latin?

<sup>5</sup> ‘Some of those tribes’ means ‘some tribes of those tribes.’ What Gender, then, in Latin? Compare *nonnullā ex nāvīis* (O.M. § 11), *nonnullī ex Bītānnīs*, etc.

Is rex Tasciovanus fuit.

Quis fuit frater Cunobelini?

Unus ex fratribus eius Epaticcus fuit.

Unde ea nomina nobis nota sunt?

In nummis Britannicis ea lectitare possumus.

Ubi regnabat Cunobelinus?

In Britannia mediterranea et meridiana regnabat: caput regni eius Camulodunum erat.

Quando regnabat Cunobelinus?

Eo tempore regnabat cum Tiberius et Caligula principes Romanorum erant. Ei primo saeculo post Christum natum imperitabant.

(B) During the reign of Cunobelinus Tiberius and Caligula were the Roman emperors. They thought about an expedition against our remote and unconquered<sup>1</sup> island. But they never entered it. Its inhabitants did not love Roman emperors, and Roman emperors did not love them. The English Channel<sup>2</sup> had given them freedom. .

5. [*ēius* and *suus*, *a*, *um* contrasted.]

In doing the exercises in this section remember carefully the explanation of the difference between *ēius* and *suus*, *a*, *um* given in the Preparations (§ 5); and remember also that *ēius*, being the Genitive Case of *is*, *ea*, *id* and meaning 'of that-one,' is unchangeable, and does not agree with the word to which it belongs, as the Adjective *suus*, *a*, *um* does. Thus 'his uncle' will be either *patruus ēius* or *patruus suus* (= 'his own uncle').

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for 'his uncle,' 'his aunt,' 'her uncle,' 'her aunt,' using (1) *ēius*, (2) *suus*, *a*, *um*.

(B) Caligula was the third emperor of the Romans. His father was Germanicus, a brave and good man. The Romans had given him that name because he had won a victory over the Germans. Germanicus had named his<sup>3</sup> son Gaius, but the soldiers used-to-call him Caligula. Caligula was a coward. His mind was full of folly.

(C) Once he not only thought about an expedition against Britain, but also prepared it. He prepared his expedition in the year 40 A.D. But when he arrived at<sup>4</sup> the English Channel he

<sup>1</sup> Say 'free' or 'untouched' (*intactus*, *a*, *um*).

<sup>2</sup> Say 'the Gallic Channel' (*fretum Gallicum*), as in O.M.

<sup>3</sup> Think whose son is meant.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'arrived to' (*ad*).'

was afraid, and hurried homewards with his legions. He captured some shells, and called them the booty of the conquered ocean.

6. [*ipse, ipsa, ipsum.*]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘the emperor himself,’ ‘the wife herself,’ ‘the town itself,’ ‘death itself,’ in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for ‘the Britons themselves’ in all Cases of the Plural.

(B) Caractacus himself was brave, but some of the other captives feared death. The Roman emperor had carried-off the captives to Rome.<sup>1</sup> Caractacus did not fear the emperor himself; he did not fear death itself. To the emperor himself he exhibited<sup>2</sup> a brave mind. By<sup>3</sup> his courage he won<sup>4</sup> freedom for himself and for his wife and his brothers. He was a true son of Cunobelinus himself.

7. [*ille, illa, illud.*]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘that soldier,’ ‘that colony,’ ‘that town,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

In the exercises of this and the two following sections (8, 9) translate *that* and *those* by Cases of *ille, illa, illud*, Sing. or Plur.

(B) The Romans had placed a colony of veteran soldiers at Colchester.<sup>5</sup> That town was not any-longer<sup>6</sup> the capital of a British kingdom. It was a Roman colony. For the Romans used-to-call towns where soldiers lived ‘colonies.’<sup>7</sup> That colony was the first Roman town in Britain.

(C) That town was not any-longer<sup>6</sup> dear to the Britons. For those Roman veterans had won victories over the Britons, and had sold many British captives into slavery. Those captives

<sup>1</sup> See Preparations, § 5, l. 26.

<sup>2</sup> Use *praestō*.

<sup>3</sup> ‘By’ here means ‘by means of’; how will it be translated in Latin?

<sup>4</sup> Say ‘he prepared (*parāvit*) freedom for himself,’ etc. ‘For’ is here (as generally) to be translated by the Dative, without a Preposition.

<sup>5</sup> Locative Case; see Preparations, § 5, l. 22.

<sup>6</sup> ‘Any-longer’ after ‘not’ is *iam*.

<sup>7</sup> Make ‘colonies’ agree in Case with ‘towns.’

were the sons or the daughters of Britons. The fathers and mothers of those captives did not love those veterans. At Colchester the Romans had set-up an image of Victory. The Britons did not love that image of Victory.

8. [*ille, illa, illud*—continued.]

(A) *Conversation.*

Quid fuit verum nomen reginae audaci Icenorum ?  
 Tacitus illi reginae nomen dat Boudiccae.  
 Quid fuit verum nomen duci audaci Silurum ?  
 Tacitus illi viro nomen dat Carataco.  
 Ubi de illa regina et de illo duce lectitavisti ?  
 In historia Anglica de illis lectitavi.  
 Quid significat verum nomen illius reginae ?  
 Verum nomen illius reginae linguā Celticā *Victoriam* significat.  
 Unde illud tibi notum est ?  
 In indice verborum lectitavi.  
 Quid significat verum nomen filii Cunobelini ?  
 Significatio illius nominis mihi non nota est.  
 Illud nomen linguā Celticā *carum* significat.  
 Quid autem significat falsum illud nomen Caractaci ?  
 Nihil significat.  
 Sed cur illum virum plerumque Caractacum nominamus ?  
 Quia in uno ex libris manuscriptis illa forma nominis stat :  
     sed error est.

(B) “ Those<sup>1</sup> Roman forces,” said Boadicea, “ are-away in Wales. That city where the veterans live is without walls. We do not fear those veterans ; they are cowards. Listen to me, Britons ! We shall take that city by storm.<sup>2</sup> We shall burn the temple of that emperor Claudius, the new god<sup>3</sup> of the Romans.”

9. [*ille, illa, illud*—continued.]

But those Roman legions hastened from Wales to London.<sup>4</sup> And, although they were not able to save that city from disaster, they won a great victory over the forces of Boadicea. In those legions there-were only ten thousand men.<sup>5</sup> And, as one writer

<sup>1</sup> For the order of words in Latin, see Preparations, § 7, l. 16.

<sup>2</sup> ‘To take by storm’ is *expugnare*.

<sup>3</sup> What Case ? Preparations, § 1, l. 7.

<sup>4</sup> See Preparations, § 5, l. 26.

<sup>5</sup> Imitate the construction which occurs twice in § 9—ll. 11, 12 (‘seventy thousands of Romans’), and ll. 20, 21.

affirms, Boadicea was-in-command-of a hundred and twenty thousand men. But, if Tacitus tells the truth,<sup>1</sup> those ten thousand Romans slaughtered eighty thousand Britons.

10. [*hic, haec, hoc.*]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘this distinguished man,’ ‘this famous island,’ ‘this fine monument,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) This victory of the Romans was the cause of death to Boadicea, the queen of the Iceni. To her<sup>2</sup> life was not dear after this victory of the Romans. One of the Romans too, the prefect of the camp of the second legion, put himself<sup>3</sup> to death after this battle. He<sup>4</sup> had-been-away in Wales with the second legion while Suetonius was-winning this victory. Accordingly to him<sup>4</sup> too life was not dear.

11. [*hic, haec, hoc*—continued.]

Julius Agricola was one of the generals of the emperor Vespasian. The daughter of this famous man was Julia, the wife of Tacitus. Tacitus praises the father of this woman, as a just and merciful man, in the book about the life of Agricola. This book tells about ‘Britain subdued.’<sup>5</sup> For after the times of Agricola there was a long peace in this island.

12. [*hic, haec, hoc*—continued.]

In the seventh year of his command Agricola defeated the Caledonians, near the ‘Graupian mountain.’ This<sup>6</sup> is the name of the mountain in the Life of Agricola. We nowadays call this mountain, or these mountains, the ‘Grampian’ mountain or the ‘Grampian’ hills. But we are mistaken. The real name of these hills was ‘the Graupian hills.’ This<sup>6</sup> is the form of the name in the book of Tacitus.

<sup>1</sup> Say ‘affirms true-things’ (neut. plur. of *vērus, a, um*).

<sup>2</sup> Use a Case of *haec* (‘this-woman’).

<sup>3</sup> Use *sē*, as in § 9, l. 23.

<sup>4</sup> Use a Case of *hic* (‘this-man’).

<sup>5</sup> For ‘subdued’ use the Adjective *dēbellātus, a, um*, formed from the verb *dēbellō*.

<sup>6</sup> Think what ‘this’ means. Here it means ‘this name’; and in the last sentence of this exercise it means ‘this form.’

13. [*hic, haec, hoc*—continued.]

These Highlanders<sup>1</sup> were not cowards, as Agricola declared; they were ready to die for<sup>2</sup> their country. To free their country from the Romans, and to repel<sup>3</sup> slavery from their wives and children, this<sup>4</sup> was the purpose of these Highlanders. “Drive<sup>3</sup> these Romans into the sea!” said Galgacus. But the Dutch cohorts drove the Highlanders out-of the mountains. These cohorts were serving under the Roman standards.

## 14. [Comparatives of Adjectives.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘a braver soldier,’ ‘a more miserable death,’ ‘a more beautiful building,’ in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for ‘juster men,’ ‘keener defenders,’ ‘more savage wars,’ in all Cases of the Plural.

(B) No soldiers were ever braver<sup>5</sup> than the ancient Romans. But they were cruel. They used to slaughter the unhappy barbarians and burn their cottages. And nothing is more-cruel<sup>6</sup> than to sell the wives and children of the enemy into slavery. But what was more dangerous to the Roman Empire than a turbulent province? Agricola was kinder or less cruel than other Roman victors.

## 15. [Superlatives of Adjectives.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘the bravest soldier,’ ‘the most miserable death,’ ‘the most beautiful building,’ in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for ‘the justest of all men,’ ‘a very merciful man,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) The fate of the slaughtered Britons was unhappy; but the fate of the captives was more-unhappy. For slavery is more-miserable<sup>7</sup> than death. To the Highlanders, as to all

<sup>1</sup> Say *Caledonians*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate ‘for’ by *prō*, with the Ablative.

<sup>3</sup> The same Latin verb (meaning ‘drive-off’) may be used for ‘repel,’ and for ‘drive.’

<sup>4</sup> Use the Neuter Singular.

<sup>5</sup> Remember that the Comparative of an Adjective must agree with the word of which it is said, just like the Adjective itself. In what Gender, Number and Case must ‘braver’ be?

<sup>6</sup> What Gender?

<sup>7</sup> Use *miser, a, um* for ‘miserable,’ as well as for ‘unhappy.’

men, wives and children were most-dear.<sup>1</sup> And to all brave men the fatherland is very-dear.<sup>2</sup> But of all Roman conquerors Agricola was the justest, the kindest, the most-merciful. And Britain had been a most-turbulent province.

(C) The Romans were very brave soldiers ; but they were very cruel. C. Julius Caesar was a more cruel conqueror than Agricola, but he was less cruel than many of the Romans. In the civil wars he showed himself<sup>3</sup> a very merciful conqueror of his enemies. He won a very famous victory over Pompeius, but he did not put Roman captives to death after the battle. In Gaul, however, he was most inhuman, and slaughtered a large number of the Helvetii, the Nervii,<sup>4</sup> and other Gallic tribes.

16. [Present, Past Imperfect and Future Passive—1st Conjugation.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Conjugate the Latin for—

'I am often praised by (*ab*) my friends,'

'I used to be praised by my friends,'

'I used to be delighted with this book,'

in all Persons of these tenses. (In the 2nd Person say 'by your friends,' in the 3rd Person 'by his friends,' and so forth.)

(B) The courage of the Nervii is mentioned by Caesar in the second book of his Gallic War. He declares them to have fought<sup>5</sup> with the greatest<sup>6</sup> pluck. And in other books other barbarous tribes of Gaul are praised by him. "Our lands are-being-devastated by the Romans," they said ; "our men are-being-slaughtered ; our women and children are-being-carried-off into slavery. Death is less miserable than slavery."

(C) In Britain, too, after the victory of Suetonius Paulinus the lands of the inhabitants were-being-devastated, and the inhabitants themselves were-being-carried-off into slavery. At Colchester<sup>7</sup> the Trinobantes used-to-be-annoyed with most-cruel injuries<sup>8</sup> by the Roman veterans, and used-to-be-called cowards

<sup>1</sup> What Gender ? (*Uxor* is fem., *liberi* masc.) See § 12, l. 12.

<sup>2</sup> For 'very dear' use the Superlative, as for 'most dear' and 'dearest.'

<sup>3</sup> See § 14, ll. 9 and 10.

<sup>4</sup> What Case ?

<sup>5</sup> See § 2, ll. 10 and 11.

<sup>6</sup> Use *summus*, *a*, *um* ; cp. § 10, l. 8.

<sup>7</sup> Locative Case ; see Preparations, § 5, l. 22.

<sup>8</sup> In this and the next two sentences imitate § 7, lines 11-15.

and slaves.<sup>1</sup> The town itself was-being-adorned with very-beautiful Roman buildings, although it was not being strengthened with walls. In the times of Boadicea, Colchester was a Roman, not a British town. Accordingly it was not loved by the Britons.

17. [Passive Voice, continued—same Tenses.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Conjugate the Latin for—

'I shall be praised by my friends,'  
'I shall be delighted with this book,'

in all Persons of the Future tense.

(B) After the times of Agricola the Britons took-pleasure in<sup>2</sup> Roman buildings and Roman baths. During the second and the third and the fourth century A.D. temples and country-houses and schools were-being-built in Britain, and the towns were-being-strengthened with very-good walls. Colchester was-being-surrounded<sup>3</sup> with walls during the first and the second century A.D.

(C) The life of the Britons was then more civilized. But liberty was gradually being forgotten.<sup>4</sup> Accordingly in the fourth century A.D. the Britons were less brave soldiers than they had been in the times of Cassivelaunus and Caractacus. Remains of very-fine amphitheatres and baths are-seen at the present day at Silchester and at Colchester.

(D) *Conversation*.

Nonne bella hodierna minus saeva sunt quam bella antiqua fuerunt?

Minus saeva sunt.

Cur hoc affirmas?

Bella antiqua saeviora fuerunt quam bella hodierna, quia temporibus antiquis captivi a victoribus trucidabantur vel in servitutem venumdabantur.

<sup>1</sup> In what Case must 'cowards' and 'slaves' be? They must agree in Case with the Noun of which they are said (the Trinobantes).

<sup>2</sup> For 'to take pleasure in' say 'to be delighted with' throughout this exercise, and use the Past Imperfect tense (Passive) wherever the tense is Past in English.

<sup>3</sup> Use the Passive of *circum-dō*, 'I surround.'

<sup>4</sup> For 'was-being-forgotten' say 'was-being-given to oblivion' (§ 15, l. 17).

Verum est. Nos hodierni, igitur, clementiores sumus in bello quam Romani antiqui fuerunt?

Clementiores sumus; nam feminae liberique a nobis non trucidantur, neque in servitutem venumdantur.

Num Romani milites fortiores fuerunt quam nostri?

Non fortiores fuerunt; nulli milites umquam fortiores fuerunt quam nostri.

Nonne Romani milites fortissimi fuerunt?

Fortissimi fuerunt; sed nostri quoque fortissimi sunt.

Num et Romani et nostri fortissimi esse possunt?

Possunt; sed neque Romani fortiores fuerunt quam nostri sunt, neque nostri minus fortes sunt quam Romani fuerunt.

#### 18. [Questions and Exclamations.]

##### (A) Conversation.

*Mark.* At what o'clock shall we play<sup>1</sup> tennis to-day?

*Antony.* At 12 o'clock,<sup>2</sup> and perhaps at 3 o'clock and at 6 o'clock.

*Alexander.* Do you not sometimes play tennis before breakfast?

*Antony.* Yes,<sup>3</sup> but not often. My uncle does not like<sup>4</sup> to play tennis before breakfast.

*Mark.* How-many<sup>5</sup> hours have you given to studies to-day?

*Antony.* Not yet two hours.

*Alexander.* How glad I shall be<sup>6</sup> when it is<sup>7</sup> 12 o'clock!

##### (B) Conversation—continued.

*Mark.* Do you like to read the *Agricola* of Tacitus?

*Antony.* It is too difficult.

*Mark.* When shall we swim in the sea?

*Alexander.* Won't it be better to swim in the sea before lunch?

*Mark.* At what o'clock will your uncle arrive home?

*Antony.* At 1 o'clock.

*Alexander.* Why don't we walk to the sea at-once?

*Antony.* It is now 12 o'clock.

*Mark and Alexander.* Bravo, hurrah!

<sup>1</sup> Use *operam dare* with the Dative: § 1, l. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Count the hours from 6 o'clock in the morning; 12 o'clock will be the sixth hour. (The Latin number of the hour will always be exactly opposite to that indicated by the hour-hand of a modern clock.)

<sup>3</sup> Say 'So it is' or 'You tell the truth' (*vēra narrās*).

<sup>4</sup> Use *libenter*, as in Ex. 1 (C), note 3.

<sup>5</sup> *Quot* (indeclinable).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'how-much I-shall-be-delighted.'

<sup>7</sup> Say 'shall-be' (Future tense).

(C) *Conversation.*

Quid vos pueros inter ferias maxime delectat ?

Inter ferias ludo trigonali maxime delectamur.

Quid, cum Ventae Belgarum eritis, vos maxime delectabit ?

Cum Ventae Belgarum erimus, per hiemem folle, per aestatem  
pila delectabimur.

Nonne scholis et studiis delectabimini ?

Nonnulli ex pueris scholis et libris delectabuntur, sed non omnes.

Num multi ?

Fortasse non multi.

Magistrine ludis pilarum delectantur ?

Nonnulli ex magistris ludis operam dant : non sine scientia pila  
dextra laevaque captatur.

Num sine scientia follis volans geminatur et revocatur ?

Magna est scientia follem volantem geminare et revocare.

19. [qui, quae, quod and quis, quid—in questions.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘Which Roman general ?’ ‘Which Roman legion ?’ ‘Which Roman town ?’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) Which Roman general was the first conqueror of Britain ? To which general did the emperor Claudius entrust infantry and cavalry forces for-the-sake of subduing Britain<sup>1</sup> ? Aulus Plautius was the commander of the Roman forces in Britain in the year 43 A.D. Which Roman legions were in Britain in that year ? The Second, and the Ninth, and the Fourteenth and the Twentieth<sup>2</sup> legions. From which part of Europe did the emperor transport these four legions into Britain ? From Germany, where they were serving.

(C) The general of the Second legion was Vespasianus. Who was Vespasianus ? He had been praetor at Rome ; and after the death of Nero the Romans created him Emperor.<sup>3</sup> In which land did he win his first victories ? In Britain, where he is reported<sup>4</sup> to have fought<sup>5</sup> thirty battles, to have taken by-storm twenty towns, and<sup>6</sup> to have subdued the Isle of Wight.

<sup>1</sup> Imitate the construction in § 6, l. 4 (*rēgem spectandī*), or that in § 9, ll. 22 and 23 (*proelīū spectandī*).

<sup>2</sup> Remember that *legiō* is Feminine.

<sup>3</sup> Compare § 2, l. 19, and Ex. 7 (B), note 7.

<sup>4</sup> Use the Passive of *narrō*.

<sup>5</sup> Perfect Infinitive, ending in -isse ; cp. § 2, l. 11.

<sup>6</sup> Omit this ‘and’ in translating.

By whom is he said<sup>1</sup> to have won these victories? By Suetonius, the Roman writer. Which towns did he take by storm? It is not known.

20. [*qui*, *quae*, *quod*—without questioning sense.]

The words put in brackets in the following exercise are to be translated into Latin, together with the rest of each sentence. The reason for putting them in brackets is to show that they make a complete little sentence within a larger sentence, like one Chinese box within another. The Case of the word *qui* will be seen by thinking of the little sentence as if it were a separate sentence. Thus 'whom the Romans created Emperor' is like 'him the Romans created Emperor' or 'the Romans created him Emperor.'

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Translate the following pairs of sentences into Latin, using *is* for 'he,' and *qui* for 'who.'

Augustus (he was the first Roman Emperor) did not enter Britain.

Tiberius (him the Romans created Emperor in A.D. 14) did not enter Britain.

Caligula (his father was Germanicus) did not enter Britain.

Claudius (to him Germanicus was father) was the conqueror of Britain.

Nero (about him we read in the Annals of Tacitus) was the fifth Roman emperor.

Augustus (who was the first Roman Emperor) did not enter Britain.

Tiberius (whom the Romans created Emperor in A.D. 14) did not enter Britain.

Caligula (whose father was Germanicus) did not enter Britain.

Claudius (to whom Germanicus was father) was the conqueror of Britain.

Nero (about whom we read in the Annals of Tacitus) was the fifth Roman emperor.

(B) In the following pairs of sentences translate 'it' by the Feminine or Neuter of *is*, and 'which' by the Feminine or Neuter of *qui*.

Augustus did not enter the island (we call it Britain).

Claudius was the conqueror of the island (we call it Britain).

Camulodunum was a town of the Trinobantes (in it the Romans placed a colony of veterans).

Augustus did not enter the island (which we call Britain).

Claudius was the conqueror of the island (which we call Britain).

Camulodunum was a town of the Trinobantes (in which the Romans placed a colony of veterans).

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the Passive of *affirmō*.

(C) Vespasianus (whom the Romans created Emperor after the death of Nero) was the ninth emperor of the Romans. For between Nero and Vespasianus there-were three other Emperors. What were their names ? Their names were Galba and Otho and Vitellius. Galba (who had served in Britain under Claudius together with Vespasianus) was-emperor<sup>1</sup> for six months in the year 69 A.D. Otho (whom the soldiers of the Germanic legions had created Emperor) was-emperor<sup>1</sup> for only three months, and then put himself to death. Vitellius (whom his-own soldiers murdered after he had-been-emperor<sup>2</sup> for eight months) was very-cowardly and very-lazy.

21. [*qui, quae, quod*—continued.]<sup>3</sup>

(A) To whom did the Emperor Vespasianus entrust the chief command<sup>4</sup> of the British legions after the rebellion of Boadicea ? The-man<sup>5</sup> (to whom Vespasian entrusted the chief command of the British legions) was Agricola (whose daughter was the beloved wife of Tacitus). The 'British legions' were the Roman legions (which were-serving in Britain). And the Roman legions (of which Otho had-been the general) were-called the 'Germanic legions,' because they were-serving in Germany.

(B) After the victory of the Romans a Roman writer called the Ocean (by-which<sup>6</sup> the western boundaries of the Roman Empire were surrounded) 'the Roman Ocean.' In the second century A.D. Britain was a Roman province. And before the end of the fourth century the Britons (who had fought with so-great pluck against C. Julius Caesar and Aulus Plautius and Agricola) were not any-longer desirous of liberty. For the delights of the 'Roman peace' were dearer to them than liberty.

(C) *Conversation.*

Quis vallum illud magnum aedificavit, quod inter Luguvallium  
et Segedunum situm erat ?

<sup>1</sup> Use the Verb *imperitō*, 'I am emperor'; cp. § 3, l. 21.

<sup>2</sup> Use the Perfect tense. What word for 'after' ? See Preparations, § 2, l. 1.

<sup>3</sup> In this exercise it will be seen that subordinate sentences introduced by *qui, quae, quod* (and here enclosed in brackets) are sometimes necessary to the sense of the principal sentences to which they belong.

<sup>4</sup> See § 10, l. 9.

<sup>5</sup> Use *is* for 'the-man.'

<sup>6</sup> Use the Ablative, without a Preposition.

Ei qui illud vallum aedificavit nomen fuit Hadriano.

Quid fuit nomen ei qui vallum inter Clotam et Bodotriam situm aedificavit?

Nomen ei fuit Antonino Pio.

Qui homines fuerunt contra quos Agricola in Caledonia bellavit?

Homines contra quos Agricola in Caledonia bellavit Picti fortasse fuerunt.

Quid fuit nomen collibus in quibus victoriam magnam reportavit?

Collibus in quibus victoriam magnam reportavit nomen fuit Monti Graupio.

Verane est haec forma nominis?

Vera est; nam haec est forma nominis quae in libro Taciti de vita Agricolae stat.

Cur, igitur, nos hodierni colles Grampios vocamus?

Nomen quod nos hodierni illis collibus damus falsum est.

## 22. [2nd Conjugation—Present, Past Imperfect and Future—Active.

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Conjugate the Latin for—

‘I see Richborough,’

‘I used to see many ancient buildings,’

‘I shall see my friends to-morrow,’

in all Persons of these tenses.

(B) Among<sup>1</sup> the very-beautiful Roman villas, whose foundations we see<sup>2</sup> at-the-present-day in Britain, was the villa which was situated in the Isle of Wight. This villa, which the Romans built in the first century A.D., has three parts. In the part which looks<sup>3</sup> to the West you see a vestibule and a hall and a dining-room and a kitchen. The vestibule and the hall have tessellated pavements. The pavement of the vestibule is made of<sup>3</sup> red and white cubes. The cubes of the hall are red and white and blue and black. In the part of the villa which looks to the North the slaves used-to-live.<sup>4</sup>

(C) *Conversation.*

Nonne libenter ruinas aedificiorum antiquorum vides?

Libenter video.

<sup>1</sup> Say ‘in the number of.’

<sup>2</sup> For ‘to see’ use *videō* throughout this exercise : for ‘to look’ use *speclō*.

<sup>3</sup> Say ‘fabricated out-of,’ *fabricātus (a, um) ex.*

<sup>4</sup> ‘To live’ here means ‘to dwell.’

Fuistine in insula Vecti?

Numquam fui; sed reliquias illius villae quam Romani ~~fū~~  
aedificaverunt aliquando videbo, ut spero. Num prope  
oram maritimam iacet?

Temporibus Romanis prope oram maritimam iacebat; sed nunc  
procul a mari iacet. Nonne tibi aliud aedificium notum  
est, quod quondam prope mare iacebat sed nunc procul  
abest?

Castellum Rutupinum quondam prope mare iacebat et hodie  
procul abest: nam temporibus antiquis totus campus, qui  
nunc inter castellum et oram maritimam iacet, pars maris  
erat.

Quid tibi de villa Romana in insula Vecti sita notum est?

Vestibulum et atrium et triclinium et culinam habebat.

Quid est in vestibulo et atrio?

Vestibulum et atrium pavimenta tessellata habent.

Num pavimenta tessellata in Castello Rutupino videmus?

Nulla pavimenta tessellata in Castello Rutupino videmus.

23. [4th Declension and 2nd Conjugation—continued.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘a British harbour,’ ‘the right hand,’ ‘the left wing,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) The whole villa is built in a square shape,<sup>1</sup> of which only three sides have buildings. Between the three wings lies a large open-space. In the northern wing there-is a well, from which water used-to-be-provided by the slaves. About the use of the southern wing nothing is known. But at<sup>2</sup> the eastern end of this wing there-are the remains of baths. You do not see these baths in the picture which stands on page 16<sup>3</sup> of this book. A Roman officer once used-to-live in this villa.

(C) In Roman times this villa lay not far from the sea. For the sea used-to-stretch to the place where the villa stands. The place now lies two or three miles<sup>4</sup> from the sea. There-was once a harbour near the villa, as the keeper affirms. Many Roman coins of Domitianus, the son of Vespasianus, and coins of Hadri-

<sup>1</sup> Imitate § 23, l. 15. For ‘is built’ use *est* with the Passive Adj.

<sup>2</sup> Use *ad*.

<sup>3</sup> Say ‘on the 16th page.’

<sup>4</sup> Say ‘thousands of paces.’

anus, and of Antoninus Pius and of his wife Faustina, are dug-up near the villa. Many very-beautiful urns too and glass-vessels lay under the soil. The Saxons are-said<sup>1</sup> to-have-burnt the villa in the fifth century A.D.

24. [4th Declension—continued.]

(A) How many miles was Richborough Harbour distant from the Gallic port whence vessels mostly sailed to Britain? It was distant about forty miles. The name of this Gallic port was *Gessoriācum*. At-the-present-day this port has<sup>2</sup> the name *Boulogne*. The Roman poet Lucan<sup>3</sup> mentions Richborough Harbour; and the poet Juvenal<sup>4</sup> praises the oysters of Richborough Harbour. He declares them to have been very-good.

(B) There were other very-famous ports on the coast of Southern Britain in Roman times. Among<sup>5</sup> these ports was the port of Lymne,<sup>6</sup> in which the fleet of Agricola used-to-have its special station. In the second century A.D. there-were Roman ships in all the British ports. The Romans used-to-call the Roman ships which had their station in British ports the ‘British fleet.’ Even<sup>7</sup> before Roman times ships used-to-sail from Gaul to these ports for-the-sake of commerce.

25. [2nd Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Conjugate the Latin for—

- ‘I have destroyed the building,’
- ‘I had provided water,’
- ‘I shall have held the coin in my hand,’
- ‘I have had the book in my hands,’
- ‘I laughed, but I answered nothing,’

in all Persons of these tenses

(B) The Angles and the Saxons destroyed many very-famous Roman buildings. Among the buildings which they destroyed was the very-beautiful villa of which we see the remains in the Isle of Wight. Hengist and Horsa had many ships and many men.

<sup>1</sup> Use the Passive of *affirmō*.

<sup>2</sup> Say ‘to this port there is.’

<sup>3</sup> *Lucānus*.

<sup>4</sup> *Iuvenālis*.

<sup>5</sup> Say ‘in the number of.’

<sup>6</sup> *Portus Lemanis*.

<sup>7</sup> Say ‘already.’

They landed their ships in<sup>1</sup> the Isle of Thanet. When did they hold their course to Britain? In the fifth century A.D. In what land had they had their home (*domum suam*)? In Jutland.

(C) Why did the Britons provide a home for the Angles and Saxons in the Isle of Thanet? Why did Hengist and Horsa hold their course to Britain? Why did they not remain<sup>2</sup> in Jutland? When the Romans recalled their legions from Britain in the fifth century A.D., the Britons were not able to drive-off their enemies, the Picts and Scots, who were-devastating the lands of northern Britain. Accordingly they implored the help of the Angles and Saxons against the Picts and Scots.

(D) But afterwards the unhappy Britons were sorry that<sup>3</sup> they had provided a home for these men in Britain. After a few years the Angles and Saxons were not any longer the friends of the Britons. They fought against the Britons, and devastated their lands. Gildas, a British writer of that age, calls the Angles and Saxons 'barbarians' and 'savage wolves.'

#### 26. [2nd Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active—continued.]

(A) The Romans had taught the Britons (Accus.) the knowledge of the true God. But the Angles and Saxons used-to-worship many gods. Accordingly they destroyed the Christian churches which the Romans had built in Britain. The Britons did not rejoice that (*quod*) the Romans had not remained in Britain. For the Angles and Saxons were more cruel enemies than the Romans had been.

(B) When the Britons implored the help of the Romans against the Angles and Saxons, the Romans answered thus: "We are not able to lend you<sup>4</sup> help." The Britons were very sorry<sup>5</sup> that they had not forbidden the Angles and Saxons to land their ships in the Isle of Thanet.

#### (C) Conversation.

Quid in Castello Rutupino vidisti?

Muros castelli vidi, et Crucem Sancti Augustini et cuniculum qui sub magnam partem areae pertinet.

<sup>1</sup> Say 'to'; cp. § 23, l. 3, and § 25, l. 12.

<sup>2</sup> The Perfect Stem of *maneo* is *mans-*; see Latin Vocabulary.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'it vexed the Britons that (*quod*)'; cp. § 23, l. 18.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'to provide help for you.'

<sup>5</sup> Say 'it vexed the Britons much'; cp. § 1, l. 9.

Nonne muri altiores quondam fuerunt quam nunc sunt ?  
 Altiores fuerunt ; nam partem murorum aetas delevit, pars alte  
 sub solo iacet.  
 Quam longus est ille cuniculus ?  
 Aqua haeret.  
 Nonne per totum cuniculum ambulavistis ?  
 Ita est ; sed memoria non teneo.  
 Quid vidistis in cuniculo ?  
 Locus obscurus est ; sed cereos in manu tenuimus, quos custos  
 castelli praebuerat. Puteum altum vidimus.  
 Cui erat usui puteus ille in cuniculo situs ?  
 Ex illo puteo aqua praebebatur si castellum obsidebatur.  
 Quando castellum obsesum est ?  
 De fortuna castelli nihil constat. Sed fortasse Angli et Saxones  
 castellum deleverunt, postquam Romani copias suas ex  
 Britannia revocaverunt.  
 Nonne piguit Britannos quod Anglis Saxonibusque domum in  
 insula Tanati praebuerant ?  
 Piguit. Nam ut Romani primo saeculo post Christum natum,  
 sic quinto saeculo Angli Saxonesque totam insulam vasta-  
 verunt.

## 27. [Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Form Passive Adjectives from the following Verbs, using the English words in brackets as a guide :—

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| accūsō [accusation]     | deleō [deletion]         |
| illustrō [illustration] | moveō [motion]           |
| exportō [exportation]   | teneō [re-tention]       |
| parō [pre-paration]     | videō [vision]           |
| servō [pre-servation]   | habeō [habit]            |
| creō [creation]         | pro-hibeō [pro-hibition] |

Give the Latin for—

The church had been built by the Christians.

The castle has been destroyed by the Saxons.

A conversation will have been held between us.

The castle was destroyed in the third or fourth century A.D.

The missionaries were not forbidden to land their ship.

Water was provided by the keeper of the castle. .

Give the Latin for 'I have been accused by you' and 'you have been accused by me,' according as the person speaking and the person spoken to are (1) men, (2) women. What is the Latin

for 'I had been praised by my schoolmaster' (said by a boy), 'I shall have been praised by my schoolmistress' (said by a girl) ?

(B) The villa, of which you have not-yet seen the remains in the Isle of Wight, was built by the Romans. It was burned by the Angles and Saxons in the fifth century A.D. When was Richborough Castle destroyed ? Nothing is known about the time when this very-fine castle was destroyed. Perhaps the Saxons destroyed it.

(C) But if a conversation was held between the King of Kent and St. Augustine through the windows of the castle, as is affirmed by some writers, the castle had not been destroyed at the<sup>1</sup> time when St. Augustine with his forty attendants sailed from the Gallic port to Britain. The castle had been built two or three centuries<sup>2</sup> before.

#### 28. [Fifth Declension.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for 'a beautiful face,' 'that day,' 'this hope (*spēs*, 5th Decl.),' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) Gregory had been moved with pity on-account-of the very-beautiful faces of the boys whom he had seen in the forum. The boys with the beautiful faces were captives. He declared that the boys had<sup>3</sup> the faces of angels. "They ought to be Christians,"<sup>4</sup> said he ; "for now they have no hope<sup>5</sup> of a better life." From that day Gregory was desirous of teaching<sup>6</sup> the knowledge of the true God in England.

#### 29. [5th Declension—continued.]

That jolly day on which<sup>7</sup> we saw Richborough Castle was the

<sup>1</sup> Say 'at that (*eō*) time, when.'

<sup>2</sup> What Case ? See Preparations, § 20, l. 15. The Abl. of *duo* is *duōbus*, and that of *tria* is *tribus*.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'he declared the boys to have.'

<sup>4</sup> Say 'it behoves them to be Christians,' and make 'Christians' agree in Case with 'them.'

<sup>5</sup> 'Hope' is *spēs*, 5th Declension.

<sup>6</sup> Form a Noun in *-ndum* from the Verb *doceō*; and remember that the vowel of the 2nd Conjugation is *e* where the 1st Conjugation has *a*.

<sup>7</sup> Notice the different Prepositions used in English to express 'Time when'; 'on this day,' 'in this year (or month or century),' 'at this hour.'

sixteenth day of the month of September. Within seven days the end of the holidays will have arrived. There-will-have-been fifty-four<sup>1</sup> days from the beginning of the holidays. On the twenty-third<sup>2</sup> day of the month of September I shall be in-the-house-of my schoolmaster. On the next day there-will-be the beginning of lessons.

### 30. *Conversation.*

Quae sunt res quibus pueri maxime delectantur ?  
Feriae, vel inter scholas dies feriati.

Quibus rebus per ferias vel per dies feriatos plerumque operam dant ?

Ludis pilarum.

Quae sunt genera diversa pilarum ?

Unum est genus folium, alterum trigonum ; tertium est genus earum quae lingua Latina nominari non possunt.

Cur lingua Anglica nominari possunt, lingua Latina non possunt ?

Quia res ipsa Romanis non nota fuit.

Qua ex his rebus tu ipse maxime delectaris ?

Nihil melius est quam follis.

Sed his rebus tum quoque operam das cum apud magistrum tuum es. Nonne verum est ? Responde mihi.

Verum est ; sed nonnullis diebus scholae sunt a mane usque ad vesperum.

### 31. *A Portrait of Boadicea.*

Dio Cassius, the historian,<sup>3</sup> declares Boadicea to have been a woman of<sup>4</sup> great stature, with a warlike face, blue eyes, and<sup>5</sup> long and yellow hair. She had<sup>6</sup> an embroidered<sup>7</sup> tunic, over which there-was a cloak. In her hand she held a spear. Thus she stood in her chariot, riding among the ranks of her Britons. See the picture which stands on the 11th page of this book.

<sup>1</sup> Say 'four and fifty.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'third and twentieth.'

<sup>3</sup> Say 'the writer of things.'

<sup>4</sup> Use the Ablative Case.

<sup>5</sup> Omit this 'and' in translating.

<sup>6</sup> Use the Past Imperfect tense for this and all the other Past tenses which follow in this exercise.

<sup>7</sup> For this and other new words in this exercise, see the English-Latin Vocabulary.

It is not strange<sup>1</sup> that the Britons loved and feared their queen. The name of Boudicca itself signified in<sup>2</sup> the Celtic tongue nothing else than Victoria.<sup>3</sup>

*A Grammatical Lesson in Latin.*

Quot sunt declinationes nominum Latinorum? Latine mihi responde.

Quinque sunt declinationes, prima, secunda, tertia, quarta, quinta.

Quot coniugationes verborum Latinorum tibi notae sunt?

Duae coniugationes, prima et secunda.

Suntne aliae coniugationes verborum?

Aliae sunt coniugationes, sed non aliae declinationes.

Recte: cuius declinationis est nomen *miles*?

Tertiae declinationis.

Recte. Declina mihi hoc nomen in Numero Singulari.

*Miles, militem, militis, militi, cum milite.*

Recte. Quae sunt terminations duarum illarum coniugationum?

Terminationes primae Personae Numeri Singularis sunt *o* et *eo*.

Optime respondisti. Coniuga mihi tempus Praesens verbi *video*.

*Video, vides, videt, videmus, videtis, vident.*

Tempus Praeteritum-imperfectum coniuga.

Videram, videras —

Non recte. In omnibus coniugationibus tempora Praeterita-imperfecta terminations *bam, bas, bat* habent.

*Videbam, videbas, videbat, cetera.*

Recte: cur terminations *eram, eras* dedisti?

Fortasse quia verbum *sum* in tempore Praeterito-imperfecto *eram, eras, erat* habet.

Quae sunt nomina aliorum temporum?

Futurum, Perfectum?

Recte; et Plusquamperfectum et Perfectum Futuri.

32. [3rd Conjugation—Present Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

'I often write letters in the morning,'  
in omnibus personis Praesentis Activi, et

<sup>1</sup> Say 'a strange-thing,' cp. § 6, l. 13 : § 7, l. 9 ; for 'that' see § 23,

l. 18; § 31, l. 14.

<sup>2</sup> Use the Ablative without a Preposition.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. § 24, ll. 18-20.

'I am sometimes sent to Richborough,<sup>1</sup>  
in omnibus personis Praesentis Passivi.'

(B) "Why do you not admit the Outlanders to the citizenship?" So our Minister writes. The Boers answer thus: "We do not admit them because they will not be loyal<sup>1</sup> citizens of our Republic. We are not able to admit a multitude of new citizens into our Republic." The Boers say that the Outlanders are too many.<sup>2</sup> In the African Republic, which is situated across the River Vaal, the number of the Boers is smaller than of the Outlanders.

33. [3rd Conjugation—Past Imperfect Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine sententias Exercitii 32 (A) cum tempore Praeterito-Imperfecto pro Praesenti.

(B) The Romans used-to-admit foreigners to the citizenship. In the first century B.C. there-was a Spaniard, to whom Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, a very-famous Roman general, gave the Roman citizenship. After that time he was called Lucius Cornelius Balbus. While Caesar was-leading<sup>3</sup> his forces against the Celtic and Germanic tribes which inhabited<sup>4</sup> Gaul, Balbus was with him. Balbus used-to-write letters for<sup>5</sup> Caesar about public affairs.<sup>6</sup> These letters used-to-be-sent to Cicero and other very-distinguished men.

34. [3rd Conjugation—Present and Past Imperfect—continued.]

(A) The names Gaius and Balbus are very-famous; for they stand in a book which used-to-be-read by all English boys. The book says that Gaius and Balbus built a wall.<sup>7</sup> But who was Gaius, and who was Balbus? Lucius Cornelius Balbus was a friend of Gaius Julius Caesar.

<sup>1</sup> Say 'faithful' (*fīdus, a, um*).

<sup>2</sup> Use the Accusative with the Infinitive ('the Outlanders to be too many'), just as if 'declare' had been used instead of 'say' (*dīcō*); and make 'many' agree with 'the Outlanders.'

<sup>3</sup> Use *dūcō* (3rd Conjugation).

<sup>4</sup> Use *incolō* (3rd Conjugation).

<sup>5</sup> 'For' here means 'instead of'; therefore translate it by *p̄rō* (with the Ablative).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'about the Republic' (Singular Number, cf. Note on p. 84.)

<sup>7</sup> Say 'Gaius and Balbus (Accus.) to have built (Perfect Infin.) a wall.'

(B) But this Balbus and this Gaius never built a wall, as is-said in the very-famous book which we have mentioned. And Balbus is a surname ; but Gaius is a fore-name. The Romans used-not-to-say "Balbus and Gaius built a wall," just as we<sup>1</sup> in the English language do not say. "John<sup>2</sup> and Jones<sup>2</sup> built a wall."

35. [3rd Conjugation—Present and Past Imperfect, continued.]

(A) In the times of Caesar the Rhine used-to-divide Gaul from Germany. Read the first chapter of the first book of the Gallic War, where Caesar says this.<sup>3</sup> He also says this :<sup>3</sup> "The Germans inhabit the lands which lie across the Rhine." The region which used-to-be-inhabited by the Belgae was a part of Gaul. For Gaul used-to-be-divided into three parts, of which one used-to-be-called Belgium.

(B) But even<sup>4</sup> before the times of Caesar many German tribes used-to-inhabit lands which lay in Gaul. Caesar himself says that<sup>5</sup> German tribes had migrated across the Rhine. Thus<sup>6</sup> in very-ancient times a part of Gaul used-to-be-inhabited by Germans. The Belgians themselves were-said<sup>7</sup> to be of Germanic origin.

(C) At-the-present-day the Rhine does not divide France from Germany ; for some of the provinces which lie across the Rhine are part of Germany. In the year 1870<sup>8</sup> there-was a war between the French and the Germans about this matter.<sup>9</sup> Before the war the French used-to-say that these provinces were theirs ;<sup>10</sup> and in-fact<sup>11</sup> the people<sup>12</sup> by whom these provinces were-inhabited were mostly French.

<sup>1</sup> Use the Pronoun in Latin, because 'we' is emphatic in the English.

<sup>2</sup> Use the English names, as they stand.

<sup>3</sup> Use the Neuter Singular ('this-thing').

<sup>4</sup> Say 'already.'

<sup>5</sup> Use the Accusative with Infinitive. So in all future passages where the English has 'that' depending on the verb 'to say.'

<sup>6</sup> Use *itaque*.

<sup>7</sup> Use the Past Imperfect tense.

<sup>8</sup> Say 'in the year thousandth eight-hundredth seventieth' ; cp. § 25, l. 8.

<sup>9</sup> Use *rēs* for 'matter.'

<sup>10</sup> Use *sūus*, *u*, *um*, and make it agree with 'provinces.'

<sup>11</sup> *rē vērā*.

<sup>12</sup> Say 'men' (*hominēs*).

## 36. [3rd Conjugation, Future Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine sententias Exercitii 32 (A) cum tempore Futuro pro Praesenti.

(B) I shall like to read the letters which my father or my mother will send me<sup>1</sup> from South Africa, if there is<sup>2</sup> war. Will my father himself serve against the enemy? If my father is-sent<sup>2</sup> to<sup>3</sup> Natal, or into the Dutch Republics of South Africa, for the sake of fighting, my mother will write to me.

(C) The British forces will not be driven into the sea by the Boers, even if they are fewer in number than the enemy. They will defend our Colonies. If the Boers overrun<sup>2</sup> Natal, as our master says, greater forces will be sent from Britain. If these do<sup>2</sup> not conquer the enemy, we shall enrol other forces. Some day, perhaps, the letters which will be sent me<sup>1</sup> about this war will be read by other boys.

(C) *Conversation.*

Quid mihi de Republica Africana Batavorum dicere potes?  
 Respublica Africana Batavorum trans Vahalem flumen sita est.  
 Cur illam partem Africae Meridianae incolunt coloni illi Batavi?  
 Coloni Batavi, qui Rempublicam Africanam nunc incolunt,  
 Coloniam nostram Anglicam in Africa Meridiana sitam  
 quondam incolebant.

Cur ex Colonia nostra Africana migraverunt?  
 Quia magna discordia fuit inter nos et colonos Batavos.  
 Unde nata est illa discordia?  
 Haeret aqua.

Ego tibi dicam: ex manumissione servorum nata est. Sed unde  
 nata est discordia quae nunc est inter nos et illos?  
 Ex peregrinis illis nata est, qui Rempublicam Africanam incolunt.  
 Quid est nomen urbi quam peregrini incolunt?  
 Nomen ei urbi est *Johannesburg*.

Ita est; Urbs Aurea interdum vocatur, quia multum auri sub  
 solo est. Quid est nomen Ministro nostro qui Coloniis  
 praeest?

Cognomen ei est *Chamberlain*: praenomen ei est Iosepho.  
 Nonne cognomen illud Latine reddere potes?  
 Non possum.

<sup>1</sup> Say 'to me' (either the Dative or *ad* with the Accusative).

<sup>2</sup> Use the Future tense.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'into.'

Forma Latina illius cognominis Camerarius est; nam saeculo sexto decimo post Christum natum vir doctus<sup>1</sup> fuit cui nomen Latinum erat Camerario; atque parentibus eius nomen fuerat quod lingua Germanica nihil aliud significabat quam *Chamberlain*.

37. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed with *s.*]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

‘I have written a letter,’  
 ‘I had said something new,’  
 ‘I shall not have declared war,’  
 in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(B) *A Letter from Antony to his Mother.*

MY DEAREST MOTHER,<sup>2</sup>

I hope you are quite well.<sup>3</sup> My uncle has written me<sup>4</sup> a letter in which he says strange things. “The African Republics,” he says,<sup>5</sup> “have declared war upon us.” Please<sup>6</sup> write to me soon, unless you have already written. Have the Boers sent an army against our Colony? Will my father serve against the enemy? Perhaps before the arrival of this letter we shall have led our forces against the enemy. I write on the 12th day of the month of October. Farewell.

38. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed without any suffix.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

‘I have read the letter,’  
 ‘I had defended the land,’  
 ‘I shall have conquered the enemy,’  
 in omnibus personis horum temporum.

<sup>1</sup> Joachim Camerarius; the name of his family had once been *Kammermeister*, which means ‘chamberlain.’

<sup>2</sup> Say ‘Antony sends greeting to his dearest mother.’

<sup>3</sup> This may be translated literally (‘I hope you to be well’), or the beginning of the letter in § 37 may be imitated.

<sup>4</sup> Say ‘to me’ (either the Dative or *ad* with the Accusative).

<sup>5</sup> Use *inquit*.

<sup>6</sup> Use *amābō tē* (lit. ‘I shall love you’), and put it after ‘write to me soon,’ as in O.M. § 21, *monstrā nōbis, amābō tē*.

(B) My mother wrote to me on the 11th day of the month of October. She told<sup>1</sup> me that the Dutch Republics of South Africa had declared war upon us. How glad I was to read<sup>2</sup> the letter which my father sent after the victories of our forces! You, most-brave Irish battalions, ascended Talana Hill and defeated<sup>3</sup> the enemy. And you, English and Scottish battalions, charged most-bravely at Elandslaagte.<sup>4</sup> The Boers have not yet driven the Britons into the sea.

39. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Form Passive Adjectives from the following Verbs, using the English words in brackets as a guide :—

|                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| scribō [de-scription]      | mittō [mission]              |
| con-scribō [con-scription] | agō [action]                 |
| re-dūcō [re-duction]       | dēfendō [defence, defensive] |
| col-ligō [collection]      | vincō [victory]              |

Give all the Persons of the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive of *dūcō*, *mittō* and *vincō*; and the 3rd Persons Sing. and Plur. of the same tenses of *scribō*.

(B) Three letters have been sent to me from South Africa about the war. Of these letters, two<sup>5</sup> have been written-out by me into my note-book. Three battles have been fought.<sup>6</sup> In two<sup>5</sup> of these battles the Boers have been defeated; but in one battle we<sup>7</sup> have been defeated. Nevertheless the British flag has been bravely defended. New forces have already been enrolled. They will soon have been sent to<sup>8</sup> South Africa. The forces of the enemy have been collected around Ladysmith.

40. [4th Conjugation—Present tense, Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

'I am guarding the camp,'  
'I am coming to the camp,'

<sup>1</sup> Use *dīcō* for 'tell,' and note that 'me' = 'to me.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'How gladly I read' (Perfect tense).

<sup>3</sup> Use *vincō* here and in all future exercises for 'defeat.'

<sup>4</sup> Imitate § 38, ll. 13, 14.

<sup>5</sup> What Gender? ('two'—'two letters'). For declension of *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, see Latin-English Vocabulary.

<sup>6</sup> Say 'engaged-in' (Pass. of *committō*).

<sup>7</sup> Use the Pronoun in Latin, because 'we' is emphatic.

<sup>8</sup> *in* with the Accusative.

in omnibus personis Praesentis Activi; et  
 ‘I am being guarded by our soldiers,’  
 in omnibus personis Praesentis Passivi.

(B) I hear that<sup>1</sup> our men are-guarding Ladysmith, and that<sup>1</sup>  
 the Boers are besieging the town. Ladysmith is not a fortified<sup>2</sup>  
 town; it has no walls. Accordingly it will not be easy to guard  
 the place. But a very-great store<sup>3</sup> of arms and of food is kept<sup>4</sup>  
 in the town. “Do you hear,” says our master, “that the Boers  
 have placed<sup>5</sup> their biggest guns on all the hills by which Lady-  
 smith is surrounded?” But new forces are-coming from  
 Britain.

41. [4th Conjugation—Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

‘I was guarding the camp,’  
 ‘I shall guard the camp,’  
 ‘I was being guarded by our soldiers,’  
 ‘I shall be guarded by our soldiers,’

in omnibus personis temporum Praeteriti-imperfecti et Futuri; et  
 ‘I shall arrive home (*domum*),’

in omnibus personis temporis Futuri; et

‘I know that<sup>6</sup> there is danger of war,’

in omnibus personis temporis Praesentis.

(B) In the times of Boadicea, Colchester was not a fortified town. The Roman veterans who were-guarding the place did not know that<sup>6</sup> there was danger of a British rebellion. “The Britons,” they said, “will never come for the sake of attacking Colchester.” But the Britons were-coming with a very-great army. Why were we not fortifying Ladysmith before the war?

<sup>1</sup> ‘I hear that . . .’ is expressed in Latin by the same construction as ‘I say (*or declare*) that . . .’

<sup>2</sup> Use the Passive Adjective *mūnitus*, *a*, *um*.

<sup>3</sup> Use *cōpia*; for ‘very-great’ see § 20, l. 16.

<sup>4</sup> Use *custodiō*.

<sup>5</sup> Form the Perfect Infinitive by adding *-isse* to the Perfect Stem Active of *pōnō*, which is *posu-*; cp. § 40, l. 12.

<sup>6</sup> ‘I know that . . .’ is expressed in Latin by the same construction as ‘I say (*or declare*) that’ and ‘I hear that.’ In English, too, we may say ‘I know him to be a friend,’ as well as ‘I know that he is a friend.’

When will our new forces arrive<sup>1</sup> in South Africa? We shall soon know.

42. [4th Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I have heard my country's call' (imitate § 42, l. 10),

'I have arrived home (*domum*),'

'I came, I saw, I conquered,'

in omnibus personis temporis Perfecti.

(B) Have you heard the very-famous song about the fifty thousand horse and foot<sup>2</sup> who are sailing to the Cape of Good Hope? "The British soldier," it says,<sup>3</sup> "has heard his country's call." I have heard and I have sung this song. We have also heard the song about the Soldiers of the Queen. Some of these men have already arrived in South Africa. At the<sup>4</sup> time when they sailed from our southern port they had not heard the news about Ladysmith. When they have arrived<sup>5</sup> at the Cape of Good Hope, they will be sent to<sup>6</sup> Natal.

(B) *Conversation*. (The first speaker is the pupil.)

Num quid novi hodie ex Africa Meridiana audivisti?

Nihil novi audivi. Nostri Castra Mariana ut possunt custodiunt;  
sed post proelium illud quod die tricesimo mensis Octobris  
pugnatum est nihil novi est.

Quot sunt nostri qui ibi obsidentur?

Nescio: sed audio eos circiter duodecim milia esse numero.

Quot sunt Batavi qui eos obsident?

Nemo scit; sed numero nostros multum superant.

Sed tum cum quinquaginta illa milia virorum, quos nuper emis-  
imus, in Africam Meridianam advenerint, numero nos non  
superabunt, ut spero.

Nescio; nam Batavi sexaginta milia virorum habere dicuntur.

<sup>1</sup> Use *ad-veniō*; and for 'in' say 'into,' as in § 41, l. 10. Note that *ad-veniō* takes the same construction as *veniō*: the Romans spoke of arriving *to* a place, not of arriving *at* it.

<sup>2</sup> Say 'of cavalry and infantry forces,' and make 'who' agree in Gender with 'forces.'

<sup>3</sup> Use *inquit*.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'at that (*eō*) time, when.'

<sup>5</sup> Say 'shall have arrived' (Future Perfect tense).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'into.'

Quot sunt viri in illa cohorte quae heri ad Promunturium Specie  
Bonae advenit?

Circiter octingenti sunt numero.

Quando ceterae cohortes advenient?

Intra hunc mensem, ut speramus. Sed non statim cum Batavis pugnabitur; nam ducenta fere milia passuum sunt inter Portum Natalem et Castra Mariana. Atque cum exercitus contra hostem mittitur, non universi milites pugnando operam dant; maximaee parti eorum necesse est vias custodire, castella munire, pontes defendere, ceteris rebus operam dare.

43. [Verbs in *io* with Infinitive in *ere*—Present, Past Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

'I desire to take the camp,'

'I desired to take the camp,'

'I shall desire to arrive home,'

in omnibus personis temporum Praesentis, Praeteriti-imperfecti, Futuri Activi.

Redde Latine—'What are you doing?' 'What were you doing?' 'What will you do?' 'Many letters are (were, will be) received by me every-day.'

(B) *A Letter from Antony to his father.*

MY DEAREST FATHER.<sup>1</sup>

The letter which you wrote on November 5<sup>th</sup><sup>2</sup> arrived yesterday. I feel<sup>3</sup> very-great grief on-account-of the reverse of<sup>4</sup> which you speak. We read in the newspapers that<sup>5</sup> the Boers greatly desire to take Ladysmith. When shall I receive another<sup>6</sup> letter from you? I desire to hear more<sup>7</sup> about Ladysmith. What are you yourself doing? What will you and my mother

<sup>1</sup> Say 'Antony to his dearest father greeting.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'on the Nones of November.'

<sup>3</sup> Use *capiō*, as in § 43, l. 9.

<sup>4</sup> 'of' here means 'about.'

<sup>5</sup> 'I read that . . .' is expressed like 'I say that,' 'I hear that,' 'I know that.' This sentence, then, will have two Infinitives in it, the second depending on the first.

<sup>6</sup> Use *alter*, *altera*, *alterum*.

<sup>7</sup> Say 'more things' (*plūra*). cp. § 32, l. 12.

do, if the Boers overrun<sup>1</sup> our Colony? I write this letter on the 24th of November. Farewell.

44. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—Perfect Stems.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I have received a letter from (*ex*) South Africa,'

'I have made an attack on (*in*) the enemy (Accus.),'

'I had put (*coniēceram*) the enemy to flight,'

'I shall have dug a pit,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(B) We had received the news about the siege of Kimberley and of Mafeking in the month of October. The Boers began to besiege Mafeking on the 13th of October. A few days after<sup>2</sup> they had surrounded Kimberley with their forces, and had dug trenches round the town. On October 16th they began to bombard<sup>3</sup> Mafeking. They did not bombard Kimberley before November 8th. Although the Boers have thrown an immense number of missiles into these towns, they have not killed many of our men. On October 27th our men made a very-brave attack upon the Boers who were besieging Mafeking, and took one of the trenches.

45. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

The trenches which the Boers had dug round Mafeking were only a mile distant<sup>4</sup> from the town. And they had brought-up very-big guns for the sake of causing<sup>5</sup> panic to the inhabitants. But the British Colonel who is-in-command-of the town does not fear the Boers. When the Dutchman bade him surrender the town for the sake of avoiding slaughter, he answered, laughing,<sup>6</sup> "Please,<sup>7</sup> when will the slaughter begin?"<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Use the Future Perfect tense.

<sup>2</sup> Imitate § 20, l. 15 (*paucis annis ante*): 'after' will be *post*.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'to throw missiles into.'

<sup>4</sup> Imitate § 45, l. 12.

<sup>5</sup> The Nouns in *-ndum* formed from Verbs in *iō* end in *-iendum*; thus *faciendum*, 'the making,' 'the causing.'

<sup>6</sup> The Active Adjectives formed from Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in *-ens*.

<sup>7</sup> Use *quaesō*, and put it after the other verb, as in § 32, l. 1.

<sup>8</sup> Use the Passive ('will be begun').

46. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

Afterwards he wrote to the Boers in<sup>1</sup> the following fashion : “ This town cannot be taken<sup>2</sup> by sitting-down<sup>3</sup> and looking at it.<sup>4</sup> Why do you not come and take it ? But you cannot. Go<sup>5</sup> home, therefore, to your farms. You will be sorry some day, if you do not listen<sup>6</sup> to me. For we shall soon have taken the capitals of your Republics.” On October 21st he sent this message to our commander-in-chief : “ All is well.<sup>7</sup> They have bombarded<sup>8</sup> the town for four hours. We have lost one dog.”

47. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

(A) What is the name of our most merry Colonel ? The first letters of his name are B.P. On holidays,<sup>9</sup> when the Boers do not bombard the town, our men play cricket and football.<sup>10</sup> When the Boers begin to bombard, a signal is given by a bell, and all the inhabitants of the town, men, women and children, retire<sup>11</sup> into pits, which they have dug in the earth. There are only about nine hundred soldiers in the town, which is besieged by about five thousand Boers. Sometimes our men make very-brave attacks upon the Boers and drive them out of their trenches.

(B) *Conversation.* (The first speaker is the pupil.)

Num quid novi est hodie ex Africa Meridiana ?

Nonne audivisti de tertia clade, quam nostri acceperunt ?

Non audivi. Dic mihi, quaeso. Ubi accepta est ?

Hic mensis nobis ater fuit. Non plus quam sex dies sunt ex quo duae clades nuntiatae sunt ; hodie de tertia et fortasse maiore clade ex Terra Natali nuntium accepimus. Sed de hac re non libenter dico. In actis diurnis legere potes.

Num nostri non bene pugnaverunt ?

<sup>1</sup> Imitate § 13, ll. 1, 2.

<sup>2</sup> Use *capiō* (Passive Infinitive).

<sup>3</sup> Use the Ablative of the Noun in *-ndum* formed from *se-deō*.

<sup>4</sup> Say ‘ by looking ’ (without ‘ at it ’). Similarly in the next sentence omit ‘ it.’

<sup>5</sup> Say ‘ betake yourselves ’ (‘ yourselves ’ = *vōs*).

<sup>6</sup> Say ‘ shall not have listened ’ (Future Perfect).

<sup>7</sup> Say ‘ all-things have themselves well ’; cp. § 22, l. 7.

<sup>8</sup> See Ex. 44 (*B*), note 3.

<sup>9</sup> Use the Ablative of *diēs fēriātī*, without a Preposition.

<sup>10</sup> Say ‘ give attention to the ball and the football ’; or ‘ play (use *lūdō*, 3rd Conj.) with the ball and the football.’

<sup>11</sup> Say ‘ betake themselves.’

Impetus fortissimos per totum diem in hostes fecerunt ; sed frustra. Tugelam non traiecerunt. Plus quam mille viros amisimus.

Magnum capio dolorem.

Nondum omnia audivisti. Batavi decem vel undecim ex tormentis nostris ceperunt.

Quomodo ceperunt ?

Fossas in ripis Tugelae foderant, unde imbre mortiferum missilium in ordines nostros coniecerunt. Itaque tormenta defensoribus nudata sunt.

Nonne nostri tormenta receperunt ?

Duo ex tormentis parva manus nostrorum summa virtute recepit ; sed cetera non recepimus.

Num Castra Mariana iam obsidione liberari poterunt ?

Nescio.

#### 48. [Present Injunctive of *sum*.]

##### (A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

' May I be victorious (*victor*, Plur. *victōrēs*),

' May I be helpful (*prōsim*) to the republic,'

in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniunctivi.

(B) During the siege the Colonel does not take much sleep.<sup>1</sup> In the silence of the night he often walks round the town or in the veldt, for the sake of exploring.<sup>2</sup> He has written these verses—

If we go forward,<sup>3</sup> we die ;<sup>4</sup>

If we go backward,<sup>5</sup> we die ;

Better go forward and die.<sup>6</sup>

May it be well with<sup>7</sup> you, most-brave Colonel ! May it be well with<sup>7</sup> the little town, which you are defending ! May you be victorious !<sup>8</sup> May we all be victorious with you !

<sup>1</sup> Say ' much of sleep,' like *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Use the Noun in *-ndum* formed from the Verb *explōrō*.

<sup>3</sup> For ' go forward ' say ' advance ' (*prōcurrō*). Use the Present tense, because ' if ' means ' if at any time ' or ' whenever.'

<sup>4</sup> Say ' we are killed ' (Passive of *interficiō*).

<sup>5</sup> For ' go back ' say ' retire ' (' take ourselves back ' : *nōs recipimus*).

<sup>6</sup> Say ' It is better to advance and to be killed ' ; cp. § 18, ll. 14, 15.

<sup>7</sup> Use the Dative Case (' to you ' instead of ' with you ').

<sup>8</sup> Say ' a conqueror,' ' a victor.'

## 49. [Present Injunctive of the 1st Conjugation.]

## (A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

' May I save (*salvum praestem*) the army,'

' Let me not (*nē*) fear,'

in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniunctivi.

(B) May our army soon raise the siege of Mafeking<sup>1</sup> and Kimberley and Ladysmith! May the brave defenders of these towns endure the siege until help arrives!<sup>2</sup> Let us not fear! Let us await the victory of our men with a calm mind! And in distant lands, where Britannia's sons have founded great colonies, let all men with one voice exclaim, "Rule Britannia!"<sup>3</sup> Long may our Empire stand! Long may our Queen reign!"

50. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation.]

## (A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

' I am marching (*iter faciō*) in order that I may save the town,'

' I shall try (*operam dabō*) to storm the town,'

' I am letting-out the gas, in-such-a-way (*ita*) that the balloon may be brought-to-land,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum Indicativi et Subiunctivi, nisi quod in tertia sententia una tantum persona Subiunctivi dici potest.

(B) A British army is marching in-order-that Kimberley may be saved.<sup>4</sup> And another British army is fighting on<sup>5</sup> the Tugela in-order-that the siege of Ladysmith may be raised.<sup>6</sup> The Dutch general who is besieging Kimberley says "Surrender the town, in order that the slaughter of women and children may be avoided." But our Colonel, who is defending the town, says "Come and take it,<sup>7</sup> if you can." The Dutch general, however, is not trying to<sup>8</sup> storm the town. His plan is to starve out the inhabitants.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Say 'free Mafeking from siege,' as in § 44, l. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Say 'shall have arrived' (Future Perfect of *adveniō*).

<sup>3</sup> Say 'let Britannia be mistress of the waves.'

<sup>4</sup> Use *salvus, u, um* for 'saved.'

<sup>5</sup> Use *ad* with the Accusative.

<sup>6</sup> Say 'in-order-that Ladysmith may-be-freed from siege.'

<sup>7</sup> Use the Imperative for 'come' and 'take'; and omit 'it.'

<sup>8</sup> Use *operam dō ut*, as in § 50, ll. 3 and 4.

<sup>9</sup> Say 'to conquer (Infinitive) the inhabitants by want.'

51. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation—continued.]

(A) Meanwhile our men who are defending Kimberley are manufacturing a cannon in-order-that they may be able<sup>1</sup> to throw missiles against the big cannons of the Boers. Food is so dear that eggs cost twenty-five shillings a dozen,<sup>2</sup> and a fowl costs twenty shillings. So great is the want that the inhabitants are living on horse-flesh. Sometimes they climb-up onto<sup>3</sup> towers or other high buildings of the town in order that they may watch<sup>4</sup> the veldt. For they hope that help is-at-hand.<sup>5</sup> Sometimes they see a cloud-of-dust, sometimes the balloon of a British army.

(B) *Conversation.* (The speakers are two boys—Antony and Mark.)

*Salvus sis, Marce! Legistine de Adamantopoli?*

*Num obsidione liberata est?*

*Obsidione liberata est.*

*Euge, optime! Quis liberavit?*

*Dux noster cui cognomen est French.*

*Quomodo liberavit?*

*Nonne scis eum iam multos dies ei rei operam dedisse? Nonne  
scis eum virum esse qui hostes supereret cum ei rei operam  
det?*

*Scio.*

*Is vir vincere scit.*

*Prosit ei! Opportune accidit quod non obsidetur.*

*Non obsidetur quia ex oppido ad Tugelam sito se recipere  
sciebat antequam Batavi obsidionem incepérunt.*

*Victor sit omnium hostium! Castra Mariana quoque obsidione  
liberet!*

*Spero.*

*Vale.*

*Vale.*

<sup>1</sup> Form the Present Subjunctive of *pos-sum* by adding *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, *simus*, *sitis*, *sint* to *pos-*.

<sup>2</sup> Say 'that twelve eggs stand at five and twenty shillings'; imitate the construction in § 50, l. 19.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'ascend onto'; cp. § 50, l. 27.

<sup>4</sup> Use *spectō*.

<sup>5</sup> Say 'help to-be-at hand (*ad-esse*)' as after 'I say,' 'I hear,' etc.

## 52. [Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the other Conjugations.]

## (A) Oral Drill.—Dio Latine—

'Let me see-to-it (*videam*) that the army be saved (*salvus*),'  
 'May I conquer (*vincam*) the enemy,'  
 'May I soon hear about a victory,'  
 'May I receive news about a victory,'  
 'May I be there to see,'

in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniunctivi.

(B) May our commander-in-chief conquer the enemy! May he capture<sup>1</sup> their whole army! He is sending-out men who shall-make<sup>2</sup> an attack on them from the North, and others who shall block their way<sup>3</sup> from the East. He himself is coming with a very-large army, in order that they may not<sup>4</sup> march to the South.<sup>5</sup> Let the Boers see-to-it that they be not<sup>4</sup> captured! May Majuba day be not unlucky for us this year!<sup>6</sup> May we soon hear about a victory, and rejoice! May Ladysmith never be taken!

53. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *sum*.]

## (A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

'I dug a trench in order that I might be safe (*tutus*),'  
 'I sent-out forces in order that I might be able to surround the enemy,'

'I was marching in order that the town might be safe,'  
 in omnibus personis horum temporum Indicativi et Subiunctivi,  
 nisi quod in ultima sententia una tantum persona Subiunctivi  
 dici potest.

(B) Our commander-in-chief had sent-out a body of horsemen in order that Kimberley might be saved.<sup>7</sup> The inhabitants had endured the siege so long that food was very-dear. But they had endured want most-bravely in-order-that the name of Kimberley might be great and famous. On December 10th a British army was only twenty miles away from the town, so that the inhabitants were-able<sup>8</sup> to see the balloon. But on De-

<sup>1</sup> Use *capiō*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *faciō*.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'who shall prevent them from-the-march,' as in § 52, l. 8.

<sup>4</sup> For 'in order that . . . not' say 'lest' (*nē*).

<sup>5</sup> Say 'the southern part'; cp. § 52, l. 6.

<sup>6</sup> Time when.

<sup>7</sup> Use *salvus, a, um*.

<sup>8</sup> Form the Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *pos-sum* by adding *-sem-*, *-sēs*, *-set*, *-sēmus*, *-sētis*, *-sent* to *pos-*,

cember 11th the army suffered<sup>1</sup> a great reverse, so that it was necessary to retire<sup>2</sup> to the Modder River.

54. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th Conj.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I sent-out forces in order that I might raise the siege of the town,'

'I crossed the river in order that I might dislodge (*locō movērem*) the enemy,'

'I was trying (*operam dabam*) to conquer the enemy,'

'I had resolved to take the town,'

'I marched in order that I might guard the town,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(B) While one of our generals was fighting on the Modder River in order to surround the Boers as<sup>3</sup> with a net, the other<sup>4</sup> was trying most-bravely to raise the siege of Ladysmith. He had fought three great battles with the Boers in order to drive them from the hills which lie to the north of the River Tugela. And although he had not fought successfully, he had resolved to lead<sup>5</sup> his men to the besieged town. The Boers were fighting in order that they might block his way.<sup>6</sup> But our men very-cheerfully<sup>7</sup> endured toil and death in order that Ladysmith might not<sup>8</sup> be taken.

55. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive, continued.]

(A) The Boers, too, had tried for four months to take Ladysmith. On January 6th they made a great attack in order to take the town by storm.<sup>9</sup> But the brave men who were defending Caesar's Camp compelled them to retire.<sup>10</sup> On December 8th six hundred of our men performed an act of great gallantry.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Say 'received.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'to take themselves back.'

<sup>3</sup> *velut*; cp. § 53, l. 8.

<sup>4</sup> *alter*; cp. § 54, l. 1.

<sup>5</sup> Either say 'that he should lead,' as in § 54, ll. 21, 22, or use the Infinitive.

<sup>6</sup> Say 'might prevent him from the march,' as in § 52, l. 8.

<sup>7</sup> Say 'with most-cheerful mind,' as in § 54, l. 12.

<sup>8</sup> For 'in order that . . . not' use *nē* ('lest'), as in § 53, l. 8.

<sup>9</sup> Use *expugnō* for 'to take by storm.'

<sup>10</sup> Say 'that they should take themselves back,'

<sup>11</sup> Imitate § 48, l. 9.

They marched out of the town by night in order to destroy one of the biggest guns of the Boers. Under the light of the moon, and with naked feet, they ascended the hill on which the gun stood. Suddenly the air trembles with fire and thunder.<sup>1</sup> The gun is nowhere seen,<sup>2</sup> for it has tumbled into the pit which the Boers had dug. Only one of our men was wounded on that night.

(B) *Conversation.*

*Marcus.* Salvus sis, Antoni ! Audivistine de Castris Marianis obsidione liberatis ?

*Antonius.* Salvus sum, Marce ; nam audivi. Omnes pueri audiverunt. Sed ecce Alexander ad nos currit.

*Alexander.* Audivistisne, Marce et Antoni, Castra Marianae obsidione liberata esse ?

*M. et Ant.* Audivimus.

*Alex.* Magister classis tertiae mihi dixit et imperavit ut vobis dicerem.

*Marc.* Non necesse erat ut imperaret.

*Alex.* Nonne dies feriatus nobis dabitur quo liberi simus scholis ?

*Marc.* Dari oportet.

*Alex.* Nonne tota schola hac nocte ignibus festis illustrabitur ? Quid dicis ?

*Ant.* Fortasse. Sed ecce magister classis quartae ad nos venit. Salve, magister ! Num schola hac nocte ignibus festis illustrabitur ? Alexander scire cupit.

*Mag.* Nescio. Castra Marianae per quattuor menses ignibus illustrata sunt, sed non festis.

*Alex.* Nunc festis illustrabuntur. Sed quis ea obsidione liberavit ?

*Mag.* Fabius ille noster qui—

Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem.

*Ant.* Quomodo liberavit ?

*Mag.* Consilium cepit ut Tugelam ab oriente traiceret et impetum in collem Petreum faceret. Atque rem tam bene gessit ut heri manus equitum nostrorum in oppidum equitare posset. Tum finis obsidioni factus est. Nam Batavi se in fugam coniecerunt cum tormentis, vehiculis, ceteris.

*Alex.* Floreat Castra Marianae !

*Ant.* Vivat Buller !

*Marc.* Vivat Robertus noster, qui—

Unus homo nobis properando restituit rem.

<sup>1</sup> Imitate § 46, l. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Use *conspicio*,

## 56. [Injunctive and Imperative.]

God save<sup>1</sup> our gracious<sup>2</sup> Queen,  
 Long live<sup>1</sup> our noble<sup>3</sup> Queen,

God save the Queen.

Send<sup>4</sup> her victorious,<sup>5</sup>

Happy and glorious,

Long to reign<sup>6</sup> over us :

\* God save the Queen.

Thy choicest gifts in store<sup>7</sup>

On her be pleased to pour,<sup>8</sup>

Long may she reign.<sup>9</sup>

May she defend our laws,<sup>10</sup>

And ever give us cause<sup>11</sup>

To cry with loud applause<sup>12</sup>

God save the Queen.

<sup>1</sup> Use the Injunctive; cp. § 49, l. 29. [For 'live' in l. 2 use *fōreō*, 2nd Conj., or *vīvō*, 3rd Conj.]

<sup>2</sup> Use *benignus*, *a*, *um*.

<sup>3</sup> Use *optimus*, *u*, *um*.

<sup>4</sup> Use the Imperative or Injunctive of *reddō* ('render').

<sup>5</sup> Use *victrix* (*victric-*).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'in order that she may long reign (*imperitō*) over-us (Dat.).'

<sup>7</sup> Say 'thy best gifts,' using *dōnum* (2nd Decl., neuter) for 'gift'; and leave out 'in store.'

<sup>8</sup> Say 'mayest thou give to her.'

<sup>9</sup> Use *regnō*.

<sup>10</sup> The Latin for 'law' is *lex* (*lēg-*), 3rd decl., fem.

<sup>11</sup> For 'and ever give us cause to cry' say 'in-order-that we may always (*semper*) exclaim.'

<sup>12</sup> For 'with loud applause' say 'with one voice.'

## DOMINE SALVUM FAC REGEM.

(A Latin version of "God save the King," arranged for singing.)\*

Vivat Rex optimus !  
 Fac nobis, o Deus,  
     Regem salvum.  
 Illi sit gloria,  
 Laus et victoria ;  
 Tu semper sospita  
     Regem nostrum.

Exsurgas, o Deus,  
 Hostes ut dissipes,  
     Et pessum des.  
 Vindex sis fraudum  
 Tu nobis omnium ;  
 Spem nostram, Te Deum  
     Imploramus.

Tu Regi munera  
 Da quae sint optima ;  
     Late regnet.  
 Leges defendito,  
 Ut semper gaudio  
 Cantemus publico,  
     Salvus sit Rex.

\* The metre of this Latin version is the same as that of the original : and its quantities correspond to those of the musical notes of the familiar tune.

The following words, which have not appeared in the text of *Pro Patria*, are used :

*Vivere*, to live ; *fac*, imperative of *faciō* ; *sospitāre*, to preserve, protect ; *exsurgere*, to arise ; *dissipāre*, to scatter ; *pessum dare*, to make to fall (lit. to send to the bottom) ; *vindex*, avenger ; *fraus* (fraud-), *fraud*, *injury* ; *mūnus* (mūner-), *gift* ; *lātē*, *widely*, *far and wide* ; *lex* (lēg-), *law* ; *dēfenditō*, 3rd Pers. Sing. of the imperative of *dēfendō* ; *publicus*, a, um, *public*.

# ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

## I. LATIN-ENGLISH.

The words printed in ordinary type are words which have occurred in *Ora Maritima* and which will therefore be familiar to pupils who have used that book. The words printed in black type are the new words which occur in this book. The references put after each word (whether printed in black type or not) are references to those sections of the present book (*Pro Patria*) in which the word or meaning occurs for the first time. These references will be found useful in recovering the meanings of words which have been forgotten. A second reference is given in some cases for special reasons. Words with no reference given are words that occur only in the *conversations* or in maps or pictures. English words in square brackets [and ordinary type] are words etymologically connected with the Latin words *but not intended as translations* of them. The Principal Parts given in the case of verbs are the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present and Perfect tenses and the Passive Participle (Adjective) where it exists.

Words of the third declension have the stem inserted in brackets, except where it is the same as the Nom. Sing. (e.g. *sōl*). To words like *nāvis* the Gen. Plur. is given. Genders are given where irregular according to the rules given in *Ora Maritima*, p. 75 and p. 129 (m.= masculine, f.=feminine, n.=neuter).

The figures 1, 2, 3 denote the declension or conjugation : 'pl.' or 'plur.' denotes plural.

## A

**A.S.—Annō Salūtis, in the year of grace, § 56**  
ab or ā (with Abl.) *from*, § 2 ; *by*, § 16 ; *ab oriente*, *from the east, on the east* ; *ab occidente*, *from the west, on the west*, § 51 ; compare § 52, ll. 7, 8  
**abhinc**, adv. *ago*, § 25  
**ab-sum**, *ab-esse*, ā-fui, *I am distant, I am absent*, § 7  
**ac-cidit**, 3, *-cidit*, *it happens*, § 39  
**ac-cipiō**, 3, *-cēpi*, *-ceptus*, a, um, *I receive*, § 43  
**accūsō**, 1, *I accuse*, § 27

ācer, ācris, ācre, 3, *keen*, § 4 ;  
ācerrimus, a, um, *very keen*, § 33 ; *ācerimē*, *very keenly*, § 44  
**acta diurna**, 2, plur., *the newspapers*, § 40  
**actus**, a, um, *driven*, § 39 ; see *agō*  
**ad** (with Acc.), *to*, § 2 ; *for*, § 9, § 17 ; *towards*, § 39 ; *at or near*, § 38  
**Adamanto-polis**, 3, (Acc. -polim, Abl. -poli), *Kimberley*, § 43 [*the diamond city, from 'adamas,' adamant, diamond*, § 51]

adhūc, *hitherto*, § 8; still, § 10  
 admirābilis, 3, adj., *admirable*, § 49  
**admirātiō** (-lōn-), 3, *admiration*, § 6  
**ad-mittō**, 3, mīsī, -missus, a, um, *I admit* (lit. *let go to*), § 32  
**ad-ōrō**, 1, *I pray to, adore, worship*, § 7  
**ad-sum**, ad-esse, ad-fui, *I am present*, § 1; *I am here*, § 12  
**adule centulus**, 2, *young man*, § 17  
**ad-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, *I arrive, come to*, § 41  
**adventō**, 1, *I arrive*, § 16; *I draw near*, § 28  
**adventus**, 4, *arrival, advent*, § 27  
**adversus**, a, um, *adverse*, § 49  
**aedificium**, 2, *building [edifice]*, § 1  
**aedificō**, 1, *I build*, § 16  
**Aedilberctus**, 2, *Ethelbert*, § 25  
**aegrōtō**, 1, *I fall sick*, § 20  
**aequus**, a, um, *even, calm, equal*, § 54  
**āēr** (āer-), 3, m., *air*, § 46; *gas*, § 50  
**āerius**, a, um, *of the air, aerial*: *nāvis āeria, balloon*, § 50  
**aes** (aer-), 3, n., *copper or brass*, § 36  
**aestās** (aestāt-), 3, *summer*  
**aetās** (-tāt-), 3, *age*, § 4; *old age, time*, § 22  
**affirmō**, 1, *I affirm, state, declare*, § 2  
**af-fulgeō**, 2, -fūslī, *I shine on, I dawn on*, § 55.  
**Āfrica**, 1, *Africa*, § 31  
**Āfricānus**, a, um, *African*, § 31; *Africander*, § 35; *levied in Africa*, § 38  
**ager**, agr-um, -i, -ō, 2, *field*, § 16  
**agmen** (-min-), 3, *column, army on the march*, § 46  
**agō**, 3, ēgī, *actus*, a, um, *I drive, § 39; I do*, § 46, *I render*, § 56  
**agricola**, 1, *farmer*, § 33  
**Agrieola** (*Iūlius*), *a governor of Britain*, § 1

**alacer**, alaeris, alaere, 3, *eager*, § 1  
**Alexander**, Alexandr-um, -i, -ō, 2, *Alexander*, § 1  
**aliquandō**, *some day*, § 8; *at last*, § 18  
**aliquis** (m., f.), allquid (n.), *some one, something*, § 1, § 37  
**alius**, alia, aliud, *other* [Gen. Sing. alius, Dat. Sing. alii], § 4; *alius, . . . alius, the other*, § 46  
**allēlūia**, *hallelujah*, § 27  
**altē**, adv., *deep, high*, § 22  
**alter**, altera, alterum, *another, a second*, § 11 (Gen. Sing. alterius, Dat. Sing. alteri)  
**altitūdō** (-tūdin-), 3, *height, altitude*, § 22  
**altus**, a, um, *high, lofty* [altitude], § 22; *deep*, § 23  
**ambulātiō** (-iōn-), 3, *walk*, § 22  
**ambulō**, 1, *I walk*, § 1  
**amicus**, 2, *friend*, § 1  
**amita**, 1, *aunt*, § 18  
**ā-mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus, a, um, *I lose* (lit. *let go away*), § 38  
**amō**, 1, *I love, like*, § 7  
**amor** (amōr-), 3, *love*, § 49  
**amphitheātrum**, 2, *amphitheatre*, § 15  
**amplius** (Neuter Comparative of amplus, a, um), *more*, § 2  
**angelicus**, a, um, *angelic*, § 28  
**angelus**, 2, *angel*, § 28  
**Anglia**, 1, *England*, § 25  
**Anglicus**, a, um, *English*, § 1, § 24  
**Anglus**, 2, *Englishman*, § 21; *Angle*, § 24  
**angulus**, 2, *angle, corner*, § 12  
**animus**, 2, *mind*, § 1  
**Annālēs**, 3, pl., *the Annals, a work of Tacitus*, § 1  
**annus**, 2, *year [annual]*, § 2  
**ante** (with Acc.), *before*, § 1; *as adverb*, § 20  
**antequam**, *before=before the time when*, § 26  
**antiquus**, a, um, *ancient*, § 1

Antōnius, 2, *Antony* (the writer of these commentaries), § 52  
 anxius, a, um, *anxious*, § 52  
 (animō *anxius*, *anxious in mind*)  
 apertus, a, um, *open*, § 44, § 56  
 applico, 1, *I bring to land [apply]*, § 23  
 ap-portō, 1, *I bring up*, § 9  
 appropinquō, 1, *I approach*, § 13  
 aptus, a, um, *fitted [apt]*, § 17  
 apud (with Acc.), *in the house of* (=French *chez*), § 1; *in the writings of*, § 17; *among*, § 46  
 aqua, 1, *water [aquarium]*, § 23; *of the water-clock*, *aqua haeret, the clock stops*, §§ 24, 25;  
*aquam perdō, I waste time*, § 32  
 aquila, 1, *eagle*, § 44  
 āra, 1, *altar*, § 4  
 ārea, 1, *open space [area]*, § 23  
 argenteus, a, um, *made of silver*, § 27  
 arma, 2, neut. plur., *arms*, § 1  
 armātūra, 1, *armour*, § 38  
 ars (art-), 3, *art*, § 15  
 a-scendō, 3, -scendi, *I ascend*, § 38 (lit. *climb up to*, from ad- and scandō; cf. dēscendō)

āter, ātra, ātrum, *dark, ill-omened*, § 30  
 atque, *and also, aye and*, § 4  
 ātrium, 2, *hall*  
 atrōx (atrōe-), 3, adj., *horrible*, § 13  
 audācia, 1, *courage, audacity*, § 6  
 audax (audāe-), 3, adj., *audacious, bold, courageous*, § 5  
 audiō, 4, *I hear*, § 40  
 Augustinūs, 2, *Augustine*, first archbishop of Canterbury, died A.D. 604  
**Aulus Plautius**, a Roman general of the time of Claudius, § 5  
 aureus, a, um, *golden*  
 auscultō, 1, *I listen*, § 8  
**Austrālia**, 1, *Australia*, § 51  
**Austrāliensis**, e, 3, *Australian*, § 49  
 aut, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or, § 17  
 autem, however, moreover, and, § 1  
 auxiliū, 2, *help, aid*; auxiliō esse, *to be a help*, § 39; auxilia (plur.), *auxiliaries*, § 4  
 ā-vertō, 3, -vertī, -versus, a, um, *I avert*, lit. *turn away* (cf. Engl. 'averse'), § 52

## B

balneae, 1, pl., *baths*, § 15  
 barbarus, a, um, *barbarous*, § 15  
 basilica, 1, *basilica, church*, § 15  
 Batāvus, a, um, *Dutch*; Batāvus, 2, a *Dutchman*, § 11; *the Dutchman* [Cronje], § 45  
 Bēda, 1, *Bede*, § 27  
 Belgae, 1, pl., *Belgians*, a tribe in the north of Gaul and also in South Britain (Hampshire), § 34  
 bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*, § 5  
 bellō, 1, *I wage war*, § 5  
 bellum, 2, *war*, § 2  
 bellus, a, um, *jolly* [French *bel*,

*belle*], § 29; Mons Bellus, *Belmont*, on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 44  
 bene, *well*, § 37  
 beneficium, 2, *benefit, service*, § 56  
 benignus, a, um, *kind*, § 25  
 Bercta, 1, *Bertha*, § 25  
 bis, adv., *twice*, § 54  
 Bodotria, 1, *Forth (firth of)*, § 4  
 bonus, a, um, *good*, § 4  
 bōs (bov-), 3, *irregular in some cases; m. or f., ox*, § 50  
**Boudicea**, 1, the proper form of the name *Boadicea*, queen

of the Iceni, § 8. In Celtic Boudicca means something like 'Victorina' or 'Victoria.'

**brevis**, e, 3, adj., *brief, short*, § 56  
**Brigantēs**, 3, a tribe in the north of Britain, § 11

**Britannia**, 1, *Britain*, § 1  
**Britannicus**, a, um, *British*, § 3; name of a son of Claudio, § 5

**Britannus**, 2, *Briton*, § 2

## C

**C.**—*Gāius* (*Gāium, Gāi, Gāiō*), § 2  
*cachinnō*, 1, *I laugh*, § 17  
*cadens* (*cadent-*), 3, *falling*, § 17  
*cadō*, 3, *eeciđi*, *I fall* (of rain, § 50); = *I am killed*, § 48; *I cease*, § 56  
*caelum*, 2, *sky, climate*, § 18  
*caeruleus*, a, um, *blue*, § 28  
*Caesar*, 3, *Caesar*, § 2; *emperor*, § 8  
**Calēdonēs**, 3, *the Caledonians*, § 12  
*Calēdonia*, 1, *Caledonia, Scotland*, § 11  
**Calēdonius**, a, um, *Caledonian, Scottish*, § 12  
**Caligula** 1, *Caligula*, the third Roman Emperor, § 2 (from 'caliga', a soldier's boot)  
**Callēva Atrebatum**, *Silchester*, near Basingstoke, § 15  
*calor* (*calōr-*), 3, *heat*, § 47  
*Cambria*, 1, *Wales*, § 5  
*campus*, 2, *plain*, § 13; *campī lātī et apertī*, *the veldt*, § 44  
**Camulodūnum**, 2, *Colchester*, in Essex, § 3  
**Canada**, 1, *Canada*, § 49  
**Canadensis**, e, *of Canada*, § 53  
*cantans* (*cantant-*), 3, *singing*. § 27  
*Cantium*, 2, *Kent*, § 24  
*cantō*, 1, *I sing*, § 17  
*capillus*, 2, *hair*, § 17  
**capiō**, 3, *cēpi*, *captus*, a, um, *I take, capture*, § 43; *dolōrem capiō*, *I feel grief*, § 43; *dētrimentum capiō*, *I suffer harm*, § 52

*captivus*, 2, *captive*, § 2; *prisoner*, § 53  
*captō*, 1, *I catch*, § 9  
*caput* (*capit-*), 3, n., *head, capital*, § 3; *chapter*, § 1  
**Caratacus**, 2, the correct form of the name *Caractacus* (Celtic *Caradog*), § 3. The form *Caractacus* is a mistake due to one inferior MS. of Tacitus. We have the same Celtic root in 'Mac-Carthy'  
**carmen** (-min-), 3, *poem*, § 17; *hymn*, § 27  
**carō** (*carn-*), 3, f., *flesh*, § 50  
**Carthūsiānus**, a, um, *Carthusian*; *Domus Carthūsiāna*, *Charterhouse School*, § 56  
*cārus*, a, um, *dear*, § 4; *expensive*, § 51  
*casa*, 1, *cottage*, § 13  
**Cassi**, 2, a tribe in Hertfordshire, § 7  
**Cassivellaunus**, 2, King of the Cassi in Hertfordshire, § 2  
*castellum*, 2, *fort*, § 11; *castle*, § 18; *castle-liner*, § 42  
*castra*, 2, neut. pl., *camp*, § 5; *Castra Mariāna*, *Ladysmith*, § 38; for the explanation of the Adjective 'Mariāna' see under the letter M. *Caesaris Castra*, *Caesar's camp*, an outpost of Ladysmith, § 50  
*catēna*, 1, *chain*, § 6

- causa, 1, *cause, reason*, § 12 ;  
causā, *by reason, for the sake,*  
§ 9
- celeber, celebris, celebre, 3, *celebrated*, § 1 ; *crowded, fre-*  
*quented*, § 9
- celeriter, *quickly*
- Celticus, a, um, *Celtic*, § 21
- cēna, 1, *supper, late dinner*, § 24
- cēnō, 1, *I sup, dine*, § 18
- centum (indecl.), *a hundred*, § 3
- centuria, 1, *company (of soldiers),*  
100 men [century], § 53
- cēreus, 2, *wax taper, candle*, § 23
- certāmen (-min-), 3, *contest*, § 17
- cervinus, a, um, *of a stag (Dutch*  
'eland'), § 38
- cēteri, ae, a, *the others, the rest*, § 6 ;  
—Eng. 'etcetera,' § 32
- Christiānus, a, um, *Christian*, § 25
- Christus, 2, *Christ*, § 3
- cibus, 2, *food*, § 43
- Cimbrius, a, um, *Cimbrian* ;  
paeninsula Cimbrica, *Jutland,*  
*Denmark*, § 24
- circiter, *about*, § 44
- circum (Preposition with Acc. ; or  
Adverb), *around*, § 23
- circum-dō, -dare, -dedit, -datus, a,  
um, *I surround*, § 13
- cīvis (Gen. Plur. cīvium), 3, *citi-*  
*zen*, § 32
- cīvitās (-tāt-), 3, *state [city]*, § 2 ;  
*citizenship*, § 32.
- clādēs, 3, *disaster*, § 8
- clarūs, a, um, *famous*, § 6 [*Clara*]
- classiārī, 2, plur., *seamen, men of*  
*the fleet, marines*, § 39, § 44
- classis (Gen. Pl. classium), 3,  
*fleet*, § 11 ; *class*, § 33
- Claudiānus, 2, a Roman poet of  
the 4th century A.D.
- Claudius, 2, *Claudius*, the fourth  
Roman emperor, § 5
- clēmens (clēment-), 3, *clement,*  
*merciful*, § 10
- clīvus, 2, *hill, down*, § 26
- Clōta, 1, *Clyde, Firth of Clyde*, § 11
- co-actus, a, um, *compelled*, § 39  
(see cōgō)
- cōgitō, 1, *I think, meditate*, § 2
- co-gnātūs, 2, *kinsman*, § 34 (co-,  
with, gnātūs — nātūs, *born*)
- co-gnōmen (-min-), 3, *sur-name,*  
*additional name (co-, with,*  
*gnōmen — nōmen)*, § 31
- cōgō (-co-agō), 3, co-ēgī, co-  
actus, a, um, *I compel* ; with  
Infn. § 39 ; with ut and  
Subj. § 54
- cohors (cohort-), 3, *cohort* (—about  
500 men ; one-tenth part of  
a legion), § 11 ; *battalion*  
(—eight companies ; about  
800 men), § 38
- col-ligō, 3, -lēgī, -lectus, a, um,  
*I collect (con, together, legō,*  
*I gather)*, § 36
- collis (Gen. Pl. collium), 3, m.,  
*hill*, § 13
- col-locātūs, a, um, *having been*  
*placed*, § 6
- col-locō, 1, *I place [locate]*, § 5
- colō, 3, coluī, cultus, a, um, *I*  
*cultivate*, § 32
- colōnia, 1, *colony, settlement*,  
§ 5 ; *Cape Colony*, § 38
- colōnus, 2, *tiller of the soil, settler,*  
*Boer*, § 32
- columba, 1, *pigeon*, § 43
- commemorō, 1, *I mention [com-*  
*memorate]*, § 3
- commentārī, 2, pl., *notes, com-*  
*mentaries*, § 36
- com-meō, 1, *I go there and back,*  
*I travel*, § 18
- com-mittō, 3, -mīsl, -missus, a,  
um, *I engage in [commit,*  
*commission]*, § 39
- com-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtūs, a, um,  
*I move, stir [commotion]*, § 28
- com-mūniō (-iōn-), 3, *community,*  
*partnership*, § 34, § 56
- com-mūnis, e, 3, *common*, § 56
- com-parō, 1, *I get together, pre-*  
*pare*, § 11

**com-pellō**, 3, -puli, -pulsus, a, um, *I drive together* [compel, compulsion], § 40  
**con-clāmō**, 1, *I proclaim aloud*, § 53  
**con-cordia**, 1, *concord, harmony, friendliness*, § 56  
**con-discipulus**, 2, *school-fellow*, § 43  
**con-dō**, 3, -didi, -ditus, a, um, *I found* (con-, together, dō, *I put*), § 35  
**confūsus**, a, um, *confused, mingled together* (from con-fundō), § 46  
**con-gregō**, 1, *I gather together* [congregation], § 11  
**con-iiciō** (-con-iiciō), 3, -iecti, -iectus, a, um, *I throw: in fugam con., I put to flight*, § 44  
**con-scribō**, 3, -scripsi, *scriptus, a, um, I enrol* (lit. write together, hence 'conscript'), § 36  
**con-secrō**, 1, *I consecrate, immortalize*, § 10  
**con-servō**, 1, *I preserve* [conserve, conservative], § 56  
**consilium**, 2, *counsel, plan, policy*, § 5  
**con-sociō**, 1, *I ally, unite*, § 3; *consociātus, a, um, united*, § 38  
**con-spiciō**, 3, -spexi, -spectus, a, um, *I catch sight of, discern, see*, § 46  
**con-stituō**, 3, -stitui, -stitutus, a, um, *I fix, determine* [constitute, con-stitution], § 50; **constituō ut** (with Subj.), *I resolve that*, § 54  
**con-stō,-stāre, -stīti**, *I consist* [con, together, stō, *I stand*]; *I cost*, § 50; *constat* (3rd person) —*is known*, § 24  
**consultum**, 2, *resolution*, § 37  
**con-tendō**, 3, -tendī, *I strive, contend*, § 46  
**con-tineō**, 2, -tinui, -tentus, a, um, *I contain, hold together* (con,

*together, teneō, I hold*); passive with Abl. —*depend on*, § 56  
**contrā** (with Acc.), *against*, § 4  
**contrārius**, a, um, *contrary, contradictory*, § 56  
**contumēlia**, 1, *insult*, § 32  
**con-vocō**, 1, *I call together*, § 6  
**cōpia**, 1, *abundance*, § 9  
*cōpiae* (plur.), *forces*, § 2  
**Coritānī**, 2, plur., *a British tribe in Lincolnshire*, § 8  
**cornū**, 4, *horn, wing* (of a building, § 23; of an army, § 47)  
**corpus** (corpor-), 3, *body* [corporal], § 13; *a political body*, § 49  
**cotidie**, adv., *every day*, § 1  
**crēber**, crēbra, crēbrum, *crowded (Abl. —with)*, *frequent*, § 41  
**cremātus**, a, um, *burned*, § 13  
**cremō**, 1, *I burn* [cremation], § 8  
**creō**, 1, *I create*, § 2  
**crūdēlis**, e, 3, adj., *cruel*, § 8  
**crux** (eruc-), 3, *cross*, § 23; *crux Victoriāna, the Victoria Cross*, § 56  
**eulīna**, 1, *kitchen*  
**cum** (with Abl.), *together with, with*, § 5  
**cum, when**, § 3  
**cunetandō**, *by delaying* (from cuncitor, *I delay*), § 49  
**cuneti**, ae, a, plur., *all together* (from co-iuncti), § 56  
**eunīculus**, 2, *underground passage, tunnel, mine* (properly rabbit-hole), § 23  
**Cunobelinus**, 2, *Cymbeline*, a British king, § 3  
**cupidus**, a, um, *desirous, eager*, § 6  
**eupiō**, 3, *eupiūlī, eupitus, a, um, I desire*, § 43  
**cūr**, *why*, § 18  
**cūra**, 1, *care*, § 2  
**cūrō**, 1, *I care for, attend to, mind*, § 32; *with ut —take care that*, § 52

**currō**, 3, eu-**currl**, *I run* [current—ruuning water], § 49; (of Time), *run out, pass*, § 32  
**cursus**, 4, *course*, § 24

**custōdlō**, 4, *I guard, keep, preserve*, § 40  
**custōs** (custōd-), 3, *keeper, guard*, § 23; *Custōdēs Rēgālēs, the Guards*, § 44.

## D

**dē** (with Abl.), *about*, § 1; *down from, or from*, § 28  
**dē-bellātus**, a, um, *defeated, conquered* (lit. warred down), § 4  
**dē-bellō**, 1, *I defeat, war down*, § 2  
**dē-beō**, 2, dē-būi, dē-bitus, a, um, *I owe* (from dē-habeō), § 56  
**dē-cēdō**, 3, -cessi, *I depart, decease*; with Abl.—*from*, § 56  
**decem** (indeclinable), *ten*, § 9  
**December**, *bris, bre*, 3, *of December*, § 43  
**decimus**, a, um, *tenth*, § 2  
**decus** (*decor-*), 3, *distinction* [*decor-ation*], § 56°  
**dē-dō**, 3, -didi, -ditus, a, um, *I surrender*, § 39  
**dē-dūcō**, 3, -duxī, -duetus, a, um, *I draw away, withdraw* [deduct], § 37  
**dē-fendō**, 3, -fendī, -fensus, a, um, *I defend*, § 35  
**dēfensor** (dēfensōr-), 3, *defender*, § 4  
**dē-ficiō**, 3, -fēci, -fectus, a, um, *I desert, forsake*; (in the 3rd person) *it runs short, comes to an end*, § 43  
**deinde**, adv., *thereupon, next*, § 5, § 18  
**dēlectō**, 1, *I delight*, § 1; *Passive, I am delighted, I am interested*, §§ 16, 17  
**dēleō**, 2, dēlēvī, dēlēt-us, a, um, *I destroy*, § 22  
**dēnārius**, 2, *a Roman silver coin—one shilling*, § 50  
**dēnegō**, 1, *I deny, refuse*, § 32  
**densus**, a, um, *dense, thick*  
**dēplōrō**, 1, *I deplore, lament*, § 48

**dēportō**, 1, *I carry off, deport*, § 5  
**dē-scendō**, 3, -scendi, *I descend*, lit. *climb down*, § 50  
**dē-spērō**, 1, *I despair*, § 49; with Accusative, *I despair of*, § 53  
**dē-sum**, dē-esse, dē-fui, *I am wanting*, § 1  
**dētrimentum**, 2, *loss, harm, detriment*: quid dētrimenti, *any harm*, lit. *anything of harm, anything in the way of harm*, § 52  
**deus**, 2, *god*, § 7; *deus* (Voc. Sing.), § 27, l. 21, di (Nom. Plur.), § 8  
**Dēva**, 1, *Chester*, § 5  
**dexter**, *dextra, dextrum, right*, § 23  
**dextra**, 1, *right hand*, § 17  
**dic**, *say* (Imperative of dicō)  
**dicō**, 3, dixī, dictus, a, um, *I tell, say, speak*, § 32; *I declare*, § 34  
**dīēs**, 5, *generally m., day*, § 29  
**dīfficilis**, e, 3, *difficult*, § 1; Superlative *dīficillimus*, a, um, § 54  
**dīligenter**, adv., *diligently*, § 37  
**discipulus**, 2, *pupil* [disciple], § 33  
**discordia**, 1, *quarrel, discord*, § 31  
**disputō**, 1, *I dispute*, § 19  
**di-stō**, 1, *I am distant*, § 42  
**diū**, *long, for a long time*, § 43  
**diurnus**, a, um, *of the day*, § 40  
**dīversus**, a, um, *diverse, different*, § 21 (ā, from)  
**dīvidō**, 3, dīvisi, dīvisus, a, um, *I divide*, § 33  
**dīvisus**, a, um, *divided*, § 4 (Adj. formed from dīvidō)

**divus**, a, um, *divine, deified*, § 2 : an adjective applied to emperors after their death ; the Romans used to worship them as gods  
**dō**, dare, dedi, *I give*, § 1 ; *I put* (*morti, to death*, § 3 ; *in fugam, to flight*, § 13 ; *in viam, to the road*, § 18, § 29) ; *I send* (*litterās, a letter*, § 31) ; *I deliver* (*impetum, an attack*, § 50)  
**doceō**, 2, **doeuī**, **doetus**, a, um, *I teach* [doctor = teacher], § 25  
**doctus**, a, um, *learned, taught* [doctor], § 19  
**dolor** (*dolōr-*), 3, *grief*, § 43  
**domesticus**, a, um, *internal* [domestic] ; bellum domesticum, *civil war*, § 2  
**domī**, *at home*, § 29, § 49  
**domina**, 1, *mistress* [dame], § 36  
**domō**, 1, **domuī**, **domitus**, a, um, *I subdue*, § 56  
**domum**, *homewards* (*home*), § 18  
**domus** (irregularly declined, see *Preparations*, § 27), f., *home*, § 25 ; *house*, § 27

**dōnec**, *until*, § 49  
**Druidae**, 1, pl., *Druids*, § 7  
**Dubrae**, 1, pl., *Dover*, § 16  
**ducenti**, ae, a, *two hundred*, § 42  
**dūcō**, 3, **duxī**, **duetus**, a, um, *I draw, derive*, § 33 ; *I lead*, § 36 ; *via dūcit, the way leads*, § 44  
**dulcis**, 3, adj., *sweet, pleasant*, § 47  
**dum**, while, § 1  
**duo**, **duae**, **duo** (Gen. *duōrum*, *duārum* ; Dat., Abl. *duōbus*, *duābus*), *two*, § 1  
**duodecim** (indeclinable), *twelve*, § 36  
**duodecimus**, a, um, *twelfth*, § 6  
**duodēoctōgēsimus**, a, um, *seventy-eighth*, § 10  
**duodētrīcēsimus**, a, um, *twenty-eighth*, § 45  
**duodēvīcēsimus**, a, um, *eighteenth*, § 47  
**duodēvigintī** (indeclinable), *eighteen*, § 35  
**Durovernum**, 2, *Canterbury*, § 25  
**dux** (*duc-*), 3, *leader, general*, § 1

## E

**Eburācum**, 2, *York*, § 20  
**ecce**, *behold*, § 8  
**ēducātus**, a, um (from *ēducō*, 1), *educated*, § 56  
**ē-dūcō**, 3, *-duxī, -duetus*, a, um, *I lead out*, § 47  
**ef-fundō**, 3, *-fūdī, -fūsus*, a, um, *I pour out* [ef-fus-ive, confuse], § 40  
**ego**, 1, § 17.  
**ēgregius**, a, um, *excellent*, § 47 ; *eminent, distinguished*, § 48  
**ēlapsus**, a, um, *elapsed, slipped away*, § 1  
**ē-mittō**, *-misi, -missus*, a, um, *I send out*, § 40 ; *I let out*, § 50

**ēn**, *behold, here is*, § 36  
**enim**, *for*, § 41  
**ēō**, adv., *thither*, § 43  
**Epatieeus**, 2, *brother of Cunobelinus*, § 3  
**eques** (*equit-*), 3, *horse-soldier*, § 38  
**equester**, *tris, tre*, 3, *cavalry* (used as an adj.), *equestrian*, § 2  
**equīnus**, a, um, *of a horse* ; *carō equīna*, *horse-flesh*, § 50 ; *Mons Equīnus*, *Paardeberg* (=horse-mountain), § 53  
**equitō**, 1, *I ride*, § 8  
**equus**, 2, *horse*, § 6  
**error** (*errōr-*), 3, *error, mistake*

esse (Pres. Infin. of sum, *I am*),  
*to be*, § 17  
 essedum, *2*, *chariot*, § 8  
**estō** (Imperative of sum, *I am* ;  
 2nd or 3rd pers. sing.), *be or  
 let there be*, § 49 ; *granted*,  
 § 56  
**et**, *and*  
*et . . . et, both . . . and*  
**etiam**, *also, even*, § 15 ; *etiam*  
*atque etiam, again and again*,  
 § 36, § 43  
**Etōna**, *1*, *Eton*, § 56  
**eugē**, *bravo!* (ē in Plautus), § 18  
**Eurōpa**, *1*, *Europe*, § 41  
**Eurōpaeus**, *a, um*, *European*, § 33  
**ēvādō**, *3*, *ēvāsi, I escape*, § 53  
**ex** (with Abl.), *out of, from*, § 1, § 9  
*(servō ex clāde) ; since*, § 35 ;  
*instead of*, § 54, § 56, l. 26  
*ex quō, since*, § 25  
**excavō**, *1*, *I excavate*, § 23  
**exclāmo**, *1*, *I exclaim*, § 18

**exemplum**, *2*, *example*, § 36  
**exercitus**, *4*, *army*, § 34  
**existimō**, *1*, *I consider [estimate]*,  
 § 14  
**expeditiō** (-iōn-), *3*, *expedition*, § 4  
**explicō**, *1*, *I explain*, § 1 ; *deploy,  
 arrange*  
**explorātor** (*explorātōr-*), *3*, *scout  
 [exploration]*, § 46  
**explorō**, *1*, *I explore*, § 11 ; *I in-  
 vestigate*, § 50  
**expugnō**, *1*, *I storm, take by  
 storm*, § 2  
**ex-scribō**, *3*, *-scripsi, -scriptus, a,  
 um*, *I write out, copy*, § 36  
**exspectatiō** (-iōn-), *3*, *expectation*,  
 § 9  
**exspectō**, *1*, *I expect, await*, § 12  
**exspirō**, *1*, *I expire, die*, § 20 ; *I  
 breathe out*, § 56  
**ex-stō**, *-stāre, -stīti*, *I exist, re-  
 main, am extant*, § 3

## F

**Fabius Maximus**, *2*, a celebrated  
 Roman general in the Second  
 Punic War : called 'Cunctā-  
 tor,' *the Delayer* ; § 49  
**fabricō**, *1*, *I manufacture [fabri-  
 cate]*, § 55  
**fābula**, *1*, *story, drama [fable]*, § 17  
**faciēs**, *5*, *face, form*, § 28  
**facile**, *adv.*, *easily*, § 5  
**facillis**, *e, 3*, *easy*, § 5 ; *superlative  
 facillimus, a, um* (cf. dif-  
 ficillimus)  
**facinus** (*facinor-*), *3*, *deed, achieve-  
 ment, exploit*, § 12 ; *facinus*  
*pulchrum et periculōsum, an  
 act of great gallantry*, § 48  
**faciō**, *3*, *fēci, factus, a, um*. *I make,  
 do*, § 43 ; *I perform*, § 48  
**falsus**, *a, um*, *false*, § 8  
**fānum**, *2*, *shrine*, § 7  
**fatigātus**, *a, um*, *tired [fatigued]*,  
*fagged*, § 22

**Februārius**, *a, um*, *of February*,  
 § 52  
**fēmina**, *1*, *woman [hence 'femin-  
 ine']*, § 8  
**fenestra**, *1*, *window*, § 26  
**ferē**, *almost, about*, § 3  
**fēriae**, *1*, *pl., holidays*, § 1  
**fēriātus**, *a, um*, *unemployed* ; *diēs  
 fēriātus, a holiday*, § 30  
**ferox** (*ferōc-*), *3*, *adj., warlike*  
**ferrātus**, *a, um*, *fitted with iron,  
 shod with iron* ; *via ferrāta, rail-  
 way*, § 50  
**ferus**, *a, um*, *savage, fierce*, § 4  
**festinō**, *1*, *I hurry*, § 18  
**festus**, *a, um*, *festal, festive* ; *diēs  
 festus, a holy day*, § 30 ;  
*ornātus festus, holiday attire*,  
 § 50 ; *ignēs festī, illumina-  
 tions, fireworks*, § 55  
**fidēs**, *5*, *faith, truth, loyalty*, § 28  
**fidus**, *a, um*, *faithful*, § 25

filia, 1, *daughter*, § 10  
 filius, 2 (Voc. *fili*, § 39), *son*, § 5  
 finis, 3, *end*, § 1; Plur. *finēs*, m., (Gen. *finium*), *boundaries, territory*, § 8  
 firmō, 1, *I strengthen [make firm]*, § 7  
 firmus, a, um, *firm*, § 56  
 flāvus, a, um, *yellow*, § 28  
 flōrēō, 2, *flōruī*, *I flourish*, § 56  
**Flōrizontium**, 2, *Bloemfontein* (—*Flower fountain*), the capital of the Orange River Colony, § 56  
 flūmen (-min-), 3, *river*, § 2  
 fluō, 3, *fluxi*, *I flow*, § 47  
 focus, 2, *hearth, home*, § 4  
 fodiō, 3, *fōdī*, *fossus*, a, um, *I dig*, § 43. Hence comes the word 'fossil' (—a thing dug up)  
**foedus** (*foeder-*), 3, *league [confeder-ation]*, § 48 (heading), § 49  
**follis** (Gen. Plur. *follium*), 3, m., *a ball inflated with air, a football*, § 17  
 forma, 1, *form, shape*, § 23  
 formidō, 1, *I fear*, § 6  
 fortasse, *perhaps*, § 17

**forte**, adv., *by chance, perchance*, § 17  
 fortis, 3, adj., *brave, strong*, § 2  
 fortiter, *bravely*, § 5; fortissimē, *very bravely*, § 38  
**fortitūdō** (-tūdin-), 3, *fortitude, bravery*, § 54  
**fortius**, comp. adv., *more bravely*, § 54  
**fortūna**, 1, *fortune, fate*, § 24; *good fortune*, § 48  
**forum**, 2, *market-place, forum*, § 15, § 28  
**fossa**, 1, *trench*, § 44 (from *fodiō*, *I dig*)  
**foveō**, 2, *fōvī*, *fōtus*, a, um, *I foster*, § 56  
**Franci**, 2, plur., *Franks*, § 25  
**Francogallus**, 2, a *Frenchman*, § 32  
**frāter** (*frātr-*), 3, *brother*, § 3  
**fretum**, 2, *channel, straits*, § 11  
**frustrā**, *in vain*, § 39  
**fuga**, 1, *flight*, § 13  
**fuisse** (Perf. Inf. of *sum*, *I am*), *to have been*, § 19  
**fundāmentum**, 2, *foundation*, § 22  
**furor** (*furōr-*), 3, *madness [fury]*, § 39

## G

Gallia, 1, *Gaul*, § 2  
**Gallicus**, a, um, *Gallic*, § 4; *fretum Gallicum*, *the English Channel*  
**gallina**, 1, *hen, fowl*, § 50  
**gaudeō**, 2 (Perf. Irreg.), *I rejoice*, § 22  
**gaudium**, 2, *joy, delight*, § 51  
**geminō**, 1, *I double, I return (a ball)*, § 17  
**gens** (gent-), 3, *tribe [gentile]*, § 3; *nation*, § 56  
**genus** (gener-), 3, *kind [general]*, § 40; *race*, § 56  
**Germānia**, 1, *Germany*, § 33; the name of a work of Tacitus, § 34

**Germānicus**, a, um, *'Germanic, Teutonic'*, § 21  
**germānus**, 2, *brother*, § 34; *germāna*, 1, *sister*  
**Germānus**, 2, a *German, Teuton*, § 32  
**gerō**, 3, *gessi*, *gestus*, a, um, *I wear, carry*, § 55; *I wage, carry on (bellum, war)*, § 56  
**glōria**, 1, *glory, fame*, § 56  
**Graecus**, a, um, *Greek*; *Graecus*, 2, a *Greek*, § 37  
**grāmineus**, a, um, *grassy*, § 26  
**grandis**, e, 3, adj., *big, grand*, § 6

grātia, 1, *gratitude, thanks*, § 51;  
grātiās agō, *I return thanks*,  
§ 56  
grātus, a, um, *pleasing*, § 18  
Graupius, a, um, *Grampian*, § 11

gravlter, adv., *seriously, severely*  
[gravely], § 38  
Gregorius, 2, *Gregory*, § 25  
gremium, 2, *bosom*, § 56  
gustō, 1, *I taste*, § 31

## H

habeō, 2, *habui, habitus*, a, um,  
*I have*, § 22; bene mē habeō,  
*I am all right*, § 22; *I hold*,  
§ 24  
habitō, 1, *I dwell*, § 8  
haereō, 2, *haesi, I stick*, § 24  
Helvētiūs, 2, *a Swiss (noun)*, § 32  
herī, adv., *yesterday*, § 42  
heu, interjection, *alas!* § 28  
Hibernia, 1, *Ireland*, § 19  
Hibernicus, a, um, *Irish*, § 38  
hīc, adv., *here, at this place*, § 23  
hīc, haec, hōc, *this*, § 10; hī  
viginti diēs, *these (—the last)*  
*twenty days*, § 44  
hiems (hiem-), 3, *winter*  
hilarus, a, um, *cheerful, merry,*  
*hilarious*, § 47  
hinc, adv., *hence, from this place*,  
§ 22  
historia, 1, *history*, § 1; Historiae  
(plur.), *Histories*, a work of  
Tacitus, § 34

historicus, a, um, *historical*, § 19  
hodiē, *to-day, at the present day,*  
*nowadays*, § 3  
hodieruu, a, um, *of the present*  
*day*, § 17  
homō (homin-), 3, *man*, § 2  
honor or honōs (honōr-), 3,  
*honour*, § 24  
hōra, 1, *hour*, § 1, § 18 (*o'clock*);  
*—time*, § 32  
Horātiūs, 2 (Quintus Horātiūs  
Flaccus), a Roman poet of  
the age of Augustus, § 4  
horridus, a, um, *rugged, savage*  
[horrid], § 38  
hospitium, 2, *inn*  
hostis (Gen. Plur. hostium), 3,  
*enemy* [hostile], § 4  
hūc, adv., *hither, to this place*, § 25  
hūiusmodi, *of this kind*, § 45  
hūniānus, a, um, *humane, kind,*  
*civilized*, § 10; *human*, § 56  
humō, 1, *I bury*, § 56

## I

iaceō, 2; iacu-l, *I lie (—am situ-*  
*ated)*, § 22, § 46  
iaciō, 3, iēcl, *iactus*, a, um, *I*  
*throw*, § 43  
iactō, 1, *I hurl*, § 13  
iam, *already*, § 6; iam tum, *even*  
*then (—even at that early*  
*time)*, § 9; *any longer (with*  
*a negative): nōn iam, no*  
*longer, not any longer; nullus*  
*iam, none any longer*, § 50  
iānua, 1, *door, gate*, § 56  
iānuāriūs, a, um, *of January*, § 47

ibi, *there*, § 1  
Icēni, 2, plur., *a British tribe in*  
*Norfolk*, § 7  
Idūs, 4, plur., *Ides (about the*  
*middle of a month; the*  
*13th or 15th day)*, § 30  
ientāculum, 2, *breakfast*, § 18  
igitur, *therefore, then*, § 1  
ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly, coward,*  
§ 7  
ignis (Gen. Plur. ignium), 3, m.,  
*fire, flash*, § 46  
ignōrō, 1, *I do not know [ignore]*

- ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*, § 8  
 ille, illa, illud, *yon, that*, § 7 ; *the great, the well-known*, § 56  
**illic**, *there, yonder*, § 31  
**illustrō**, 1, *I illustrate, light up*, § 29  
**imber** (*imbr-*), 3, *shower, rain*, § 46  
**immō**, adv., *on the contrary*, § 37  
**imperātor** (*imperātōr-*), 3, *commander-in-chief*, § 42  
**imperfectus**, a, um, *imperfect, incomplete*, § 56  
**imperitō**, 1, *I am emperor*, § 3 ; *I hold sway*, § 8 ; with Dat. (=over), § 6  
**imperium**, 2, *empire*, § 3 ; *command*, § 10, plur. § 46  
**imperō**, 1 *order*, § 1 ; (with Dat.), *I impose (upon)*, § 2 ; *imperō ut* (with Subjunctive), *I order that (something shall be done)*, § 51  
**impetus**, 4, *assault, attack*, § 43 ; *charge*, § 44 ; *fury*, § 54  
**impiger**, *impigra*, *impigrum*, *active* (not sluggish), § 17  
**impigrē**, *actively, bravely*, § 38  
**implōrō**, 1, *I implore*, § 6  
 in (with Abl.), *in or on*, § 1 ; (with Acc.), *into or onto*, § 2  
**in-certus**, a, um, *un-certain*, § 26  
**in-eidō**, 3, -eidi, *I fall upon* (with Dat.), § 39 [hence English 'incident'] ; *I fall into* (ir. insidiās), § 46  
**in-cipiō**, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus, a, um, *I begin*, § 44  
**incitō**, 1, *I urge, incite*, § 8  
**incola**, 1, *inhabitant*, § 2  
**in-eolō**, 3, -eolūl, *I inhabit*, § 32  
**incommodum**, 2, *misfortune, reverse*, § 39  
**indāgō (-gin-)**, 3, *nat*, § 13  
**inde**, *thence*  
**index** (*indic-*), 3, *index* ; *index verbōrum*, *vocabulary*  
**indicō**, 1, *I indicate, point out*, § 46
- in-dicō**, 3, -dixi, -dictus, a, um, *I declare (bellum, war)*, § 37  
**inferior** (*inferiōr-*), 3, comp. adj., *lower [inferior]*, § 24  
**in-fluō**, 3, -fluxi, *I flow in [influx]*, § 33  
**in-fundō**, 3, -fūdi, -fūsus, a, um, *I pour in [infuse, infusion]*, § 34  
**ingens** (*ingent-*), 3, adj., *huge*, § 9  
**inhūmānus**, a, um, *unkind, in-human*, § 14 ; *uncivilized*, § 15  
**in-humātus**, a, um, *un-buried*, § 13  
**in-iquus**, a, um, *un-favourable (in-, un-, aequus, equai, favourable)*, § 39  
**initium**, 2, *beginning*, § 20  
**iniūria**, 1, *injury, wrong*, § 7  
**inopia**, 1, *want*, § 50  
**inquam**, *say I, I say*, § 21 ; *inquit, says he, he says*, § 6 ; *inquisimus, we say*, § 18 ; *inquiunt, they say*, § 22  
**in-scribō**, 3, -seripsi, -scriptus, a, um, *I inscribe, write an inscription*, § 56  
**insidiae**, 1, plur., *ambush, trap*, § 46  
**in-sido**, 3, -sēdi, -sessus, a, um, *I settle on, am perched on*, § 44  
**insigne**, 3 (declined like mare), *distinction, badge [ensign]*, § 34  
**insignis**, e, 3, *distinguished*, § 5  
**in-stō, -stāre, -stīl**, *I am at hand*, § 30 (with Dat.) ; *I pursue*, § 45  
**insula**, 1, *island*, § 2  
**in-sum, -fiūl, -esse**, *I am in*, § 1 ; sometimes with Dat.  
**intactus**, a, um, *untouched, intact*, § 4  
 inter (with Acc.), *between*, § 8, § 31 ; *during*, § 18 ; *among*, § 7, § 19, § 32 ; *inter sē, one with the other, mutually*, § 56

interdum, sometimes, § 1  
 interēā, meanwhile, § 9  
**inter-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, a, um,  
*I kill* (lit. *make away with*), § 43  
**interim**, meanwhile  
**interior** (*interiōr-*), 3, *interior*,  
*inner*, § 11  
**interrogō**, 1, *I ask, enquire*, § 19  
**intrā** (with Acc.), *within*, § 23;  
 (of time), § 29  
**intrō**, 1, *I enter*, § 2  
**invictus**, a, um, *unconquered, in-*  
*vincible*  
**ipse**, *ipso*, *ipsum*, -self, § 6; in  
*ipsō tempore*, *at the very*  
*time, in the nick of time*, § 39  
**ira**, 1, *anger, wrath*, § 15, § 27  
**is, ea, id, that**, § 2; *is . . . qui*,  
*he . . . who*, *ei . . . qui*,  
*those . . . who*, § 51

**Isca**, 1, *Caerleon*, on the Usk, not  
 far from Cardiff, § 5  
**ita**, *thus, so*, § 21; *in such a way*,  
 § 53  
**Italia**, 1, *Italy*, § 6  
**itaque**, *accordingly, therefore*, § 3  
**iter** (*itiner-*), 3, n., *march*, § 39;  
*iter faciō*, *I march*, § 44  
**iterum**, *a second time*, § 23  
**fubeō**, 2, *iussi*, *iussus*, a, um, *I bid,*  
*command*, § 25  
**iūdaeus**, 2, *Jew*, § 32  
**iūdicō**, 1, *I judge*, § 49  
**iūnius**, a, um, *of June*, § 56  
**iustus**, a, um, *just*, § 10; *proper,*  
*regular*, § 13 (*iustum proe-*  
*lūm, a pitched battle*)  
**iuvat** (3rd pers. sing., present  
*tense, 1st Conj.*), *it delights*,  
 § 17

## K

**Kalendae**, 1, plur., *Calends*, the first day of each month, § 1

## L

**labor** (*labōr-*), 3, *labour, toil*, § 35  
**labōrō**, 1, *I labour, am in diffi-*  
*culties*, § 39  
**lāc** (*lact-*), 3, n., *milk*, § 50  
**lacus**, 4, *lake, pond*; *Lacus*  
*Grāmineus*, *Graspan* (-Grass  
 Pond), on the frontier of the  
 Orange River Colony, § 44  
**laetitia**, 1, *delight, happiness*, § 56  
**laevus**, a, um, *left*; *laeva*, *left*  
*hand*, § 17  
**later**, 3, *brick*, § 22  
**Latīnē**, adv., *in Latin*  
**Latinus**, a, um, *Latin*, § 15  
**lātus**, a, um, *wide, broad*, § 15  
**laudō**, 1, *I praise*, § 16  
**laus** (*laud-*), 3, *praise*, § 44  
**lectitō**, 1, *I read*, § 1  
**lectus**, 2, *bed*, § 29

**lēgātus**, 2, *lieutenant - general,*  
*general [legate]*, § 38  
**legiō** (-iōn-), 3, *legion* (about  
 5,000 men), § 9; *brigade*  
 (consisting of four battalions,  
 about 3,200 men), § 47  
**legō**, 3, lēgī, *lectus*, a, um, *I read*,  
 § 34  
**lentē**, *slowly*, § 49  
**levis**, a, 3, *light*: *equitēs Africāni*  
*levis armātūrae*, *Imperial*  
*Light Horse* (consisting of  
 Outlanders of the Transvaal),  
 § 38  
**libenter**, *gladly, willingly*, § 17  
**liber**, *libr-um*, -ī, -ō, 2, *book*, § 1  
**liber**, *libera*, *liberum*, *free* (some-  
 times with Abl. *-from*), § 4;  
*independent*, § 49

liberī, 2, pl., *children* (properly an adjective meaning "free ones," i.e. children of free-born parents), § 7

liberō, 1, *I liberate, set free; urbem obsidiōne liberō, I raise the siege of a town*, § 44

libertās (-tāt-), 3, *liberty, freedom*, § 4

licet (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Perf. licuit), *it is allowed* (Dat., *to*), *it is lawful* (Dat., *for*), § 56. [Hence licentia, 'licence.]

lingua, 1, *tongue, language*, § 15

littera, 1, *letter* (of the alphabet), § 3; litterae (pl.), *literature, letters*, § 15; *a letter—an epistle*, § 31

litterārius, a, um, *connected with letters* (litterae), *literary*, § 15

lītūs (litor-), 3, *coast*, § 2

locus, 2, *place* (pl. loca, n.), or *passage of a book* (pl. locī, m.), § 1; locō, *in place, instead (with Gen.)*

Londinium, 2, *London*, § 9

longē, far, § 8

longinquus, a, um, *distant*, § 56

longus, a, um, *long*, § 2; longum, *a long story*, § 31

lūdus, 2, *game*, § 1; lūdus litterārius, *school*, § 15

Luguvalium, 2, *Carlisle*, § 11

lūna, 1, *moon*, § 29

lupus, 2, *wolf*, § 12

lux (lūc-), 3, *light*, § 55

## M

Macrifontlum, 2, *Magersfontein* (—'Lean or Meagre Fountain'), on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 45

maister, 2, *schoolmaster, teacher*, § 1

magnitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *magnitude, greatness*, § 49

magnopere (—magnō opere), *greatly*, § 10

magnus, a, um, *great, large*, § 2

māior (m., f.), māius (n.), (māiōr-) 3, *greater* [major, major-ity], § 15; Māior Britannia, *Greater Britain*, § 49

māiōrēs (plur.), *ancestors*, § 20

Maiūba, 1, *Majuba*, a hill on the northern frontier of Natal, § 35

Maiūbensis, e, 3, *of Majuba*, § 52

Mancuniensis, e, 3, *of Manchester* (*Mancunium*); *Mancuniensēs the Manchesters*, § 50

mandō, 1, *I commit, entrust*, § 5

māne (indeclinable), properly *in the morning*, § 1; *on the morning*, § 46; ā māne, *from morning*, § 30

maneō, 2, mansī, *I remain*, § 26

manūmissiō (-iōn-), 3, *manumission, liberation*

manus, 4, f., *hand*, § 23; *power, possession*, § 28; band, § 25

manūscriptus, a, um, *manuscript (written by the hand)*

Marcus, 2, *Mark*, § 1

Mare, 3, *sea*, § 1

Mariānus, a, um, *Marian*; Castra Mariāna, *Ladysmith*, the headquarters of the British forces in Natal; so called after the wife of Sir Harry Smith. Her Christian names were *Juana Maria*

maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime*, § 11

Martiālis, 3, *Martial*, a Roman poet of the first century A.D., § 17, § 33

**Martius, a, um, of March,** § 53  
**māter (mātr-), 3, mother,** § 38  
**maximē, chiefly**  
**maximus, a, um, greatest, very great** (Superlative of *magnus*, a, um), § 20  
**mē, me, § 1; mēcum, with me**  
**mediocriter, moderately, tolerably,** § 15  
**mediterrāneus, a, um, midland, inland,** § 3; **mediterrānea, pl., n., the midlands**  
**medius, a, um, mid, middle,** § 16  
**melior (m., f.), melius (n.), better,** Comparative of *bonus*, a, um, § 18  
**membrum, 2, limb [member],** § 33  
**memoria, 1, memory,** § 10; **memoriā teneō, I remember,** § 24; **in memoriam** (with Gen.), **in memory (of),** § 55  
**mensis (Gen. Plur. mensium), 3, m., month,** § 1  
**mercātor, 3, merchant,** § 9  
**mereō, 2, merui, meritus, a, um, I merit, earn,** § 56  
**meridiānus, a, um, southern (lit. of the mid-day; see *meridiēs*),** § 2  
**meridiēs, 5, m., South (lit. mid-day),** § 50  
**meus (Voc. mī, § 17), mea, meum, my,** § 1  
**migrō, 1, I migrate,** § 19  
**mihi, to me,** § 1  
**miles (milit-), 3, soldier,** § 13  
**milia, 3, thousands,** § 9  
**militāris, e, 3, military: rēs militāris, warfare,** § 35  
**militō, 1, I serve (as a soldier),** § 11  
**mille** (indeclinable in the Singular; Plural *milia*, declinable, § 9), **a thousand,** § 55  
**millēsimus, a, um, thousandth,** § 56  
**minimus, a, um, Superlative of parvus, smallest, least;** **minimus natū, youngest** (lit. least by birth), § 49

**minister, ministr-um, -i, -ō, 2, servant, minister,** § 25; **Minister of State,** § 31  
**ministrō, i, I attend [minister],** § 47 (*tormentis ministrō, I serve the guns*)  
**minor (m., f.), minus (n.), Comparative of parvus, smaller, less,** § 17  
**minus, adv., less,** § 8; **not very,** § 45  
**mīrus, a, um, wonderful, strange,** § 6  
**miser, misera, miserum, unhappy, miserable, wretched,** § 14  
**misericordia, 1, pity,** § 28  
**missile, 3, missile,** § 13  
**mittō, 3, mīsi, missus, a, um, i send** (sometimes — *I let go*), § 32  
**mōbilitās (-tāt-), 3, mobility,** § 17  
**modus, 2, manner, way,** § 13  
**Mōna, 1, Isle of Anglesea,** § 7  
**mons (mont-), 3, m., mountain,** § 5  
**monstrō, 1, I show, point out,** § 2  
**monumentum, 2, monument,** § 10  
**mora, 1, delay,** § 18  
**mors (mort-), 3, death,** § 3  
**mortifer, a, um, death-bringing, deadly,** § 46 (compare *frūgifer, aquili-fer, etc.*)  
**mortuus, a, um, dead,** § 7  
**mōs (mōr-), 3, custom,** § 6; **mōre suō, according to his custom,** § 53  
**moveō, 2, mōvi, mōtus, a, um, I move [motion]; hostem locō moveō, I move the enemy from his position, I dislodge the enemy,** § 54  
**mox, in due course (soon),** § 29  
**multitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, multitude,** § 6  
**multus, a, um, much: multi, ae, a, many,** § 2; **multa, many things,** § 1; **multum (adv.), much, very much,** § 1; **very,**

§ 34; multō, by much (multō plūs, much more, lit. more by much, § 36; multō ante, much before, long before, § 41) mūlus, 2, mule, § 39

mūniō, 4, I fortify, § 40  
mūrus, 2, wall, § 7  
mūtatiō (-iōn-), 3, change, § 30  
mūtatus, a, um, changed, § 17  
mūtō, 1, I change, § 49

## N

nam, for, § 1  
narrō, 1, I tell, narrate, § 6  
nātālis, e, connected with birth : Terra Nātālis, the land of the Nativity, Natal, so called because discovered on Christmas Day, § 36; fēriae Nātālēs, Christmas holidays, § 43  
nātiō (-iōn-), 3, tribe, nation, § 16, § 21  
natō, 1, I swim, bathe, § 1  
nātūs, 4, birth, § 49  
nātus, a, um, born, § 3; produced, § 31 (cp. native oysters)  
ante Christum nātūm = B.C.  
post Christum nātūm = A.D.  
sexāginta annōs nātus, sixty years old, § 48  
nauta, 1, sailor  
nāvālis, e, 3, naval, belonging to the navy, § 39  
nāvigium, 2, vessel, ship, § 9  
nāvigō, 1, I sail [navigate], § 23  
nāvis (Gen. Plur. nāvinum), 3, ship, § 11; nāvis longa, ship of war, § 36; nāvis āeria, balloon, § 50  
-ne marks a question, § 16, § 21  
nē, not (in expressions of desire), § 49; lest or that . . . not, § 52  
nē . . . quidem, not even . . . , § 12  
nebula, 1, cloud, § 50  
nec, nor, and not, § 2  
nec . . . nec, neither . . . nor, § 12  
necessē (indeclinable), necessary, § 1 (Dat. —for, § 16)

ne-sciō, 4, I do not know, § 41  
nexus, 4, bond [con-nection], § 56  
nidus, 2, nest, § 44  
nihil, nothing, § 2; nihil litterārum, no letter, § 43  
nimis, too, § 18  
nisi, unless, if . . . not, § 37; except  
nōbis, to us, § 6  
nobiscum, with us, § 18  
noctū, by night, in the night-time, § 51  
nōmen (-min-), 3, name [nominal], § 3; reputation, § 48; race (nōmen Britannicum), § 48  
nōminō, 1, I name, call, § 3  
nōn, not, § 2  
nōndum, not yet, § 5  
nōn iam, no longer, not any longer  
nōnne (-nōn+ne), not ? § 16  
nonnulli, ae, a, some [nōn, not, nulli, none], § 1  
nōnumquam, sometimes (lit. not never), § 50  
Nōnae, 1, plur., Nones (from nōnus, a, um; lit. the ninth day before the Ides, according to the Roman method of reckoning; the fifth or seventh day of the month), § 39  
nōnāgēsimus, a, um, ninetieth, § 25  
nōnus, a, um, ninth, § 10  
nōs, we or us; ourselves, § 1  
nōster, nostra, nostrum, our, § 1; nostri, m. plur., our men, § 38  
nōtitia, 1, knowledge, § 25

nōtus, a, um, *known*, § 19  
 novem (indeclinable), *nine*, § 6  
 November, bris, bre, 3, of November, § 38  
 novus, a, um, *new*, § 4; quid novī, § 31; aliquid novī, § 37; nihil novī, § 49; novae rēs, *revolution*, § 35  
 nox (noct-), 3, *night*, § 13; noctēs diēsque, *day and night*, § 43  
 nūdatus, a, um, *denuded, striped*, § 8  
 nūdō, 1, *I strip, denude* (Abl. —of), § 8, § 47  
 nūdus, a, um, *naked, bare*, § 50

nullus, a, um (Gen. Sing. nullius, Dat. nullī), *not any, no*, § 8  
 num, *whether, marking a question*, § 8  
 numerus, 2, *number*, § 2  
 nummus, 2, *coin*, § 1  
 numquam, *never*, § 8  
 nunc, *now*, § 12  
 nuntiō, 1, *I announce*, § 8; *report*, § 36  
 nuntius, 2, *messenger* (*nuntius verbi divini, missionary*, § 25); *message*, § 41  
 nūper, *recently, lately*, § 24  
 nusquam, *adv., nowhere*, § 46

## O

oblivīlō (-iōn-), 3, *oblivion, forgetfulness*, § 2; obliviōni dō, *I consign to oblivion, I forget*, § 15  
 ob-ruō, 3, -rui, *I bury*, § 56  
 obscūrō, 1, *I obscure, darken*, § 50  
 obseūrus, a, um, *obscure, dark*, § 1, § 23  
 ob-sessus, a, um, *besieged*, § 43 (heading)  
 ob-sideō, 2, -sēdi, -sessus, a, um, *I besiege*, lit. *sit down against*, § 23  
 ob-sidiō (-iōn-), 3, *siege*, § 50; urbem obsidiōne liberō, *I raise the siege of a town, lit. I free a town from siege*, § 44  
 ob-stō, -stāre, -stīl (with Dat.), *I stand against, resist*  
 ob-tineō, 2, -tinūl, -tentus, a, um, *I retain, maintain, keep hold of*, § 35. [The English word 'obtain' comes from obtineō, but does not mean the same; to 'obtain' generally = 'to get']  
 occidens (occident-), 3, *the West*, § 12  
 occidentālis, e, 3, *western*, § 10  
 oo-cidō, 3, -cidi, *I set* (used of the

sun, moon and stars; from ob- and cadō, *I fall*), § 49  
 occultō, 1, *I hide*, § 5  
 occupō, 1, *I seize [occupy]*, § 5  
 octāvus, a, um, *eighth [octave]*, § 38  
 octingentēsimus, a, um, *eight hundredth*, § 56  
 octingenti, ae, a, *eight hundred*  
 octō (indeclinable), *eight*, § 44  
 Octōber, bris, bre, 3, of October, § 31  
 octōgēsimus, a, um, *eightieth*, § 56  
 octōgintā, *eighty*, § 9  
 oculus, 2, *eye*, § 6; *in oculis, in sight*, § 22  
 odium, 2, *hatred*, § 56  
 officium, 2, *duty*, § 56  
 ölim, *adv., long ago, in the olden time*, § 56  
 ömen (ömin-), 3, *omen, sign [ominous]*, § 8  
 omnia, Neut. Plur. of omnis, *all things, everything*  
 omnīnō *altogether*, § 27  
 omnis, 3, adj., *every*; Plur. omnēs, m. and f., *omnia, n., all*, § 3  
 opera, 1, *attention, study*, § 1; operam dō ut, *I take pains that, I try to*, § 50

**oportet** (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Perf. oportuit); *it behoves, it befits*: **oportet mē**, *I ought*, § 28  
**oppidum**, *2, town*, § 2  
**opportūnē**, *fortunately, opportunely*, § 39  
**opugnō**, *1, I attack*, § 9  
**optimē**, *excellently, hurrah!* § 18  
**optimus**, *a, um, best*, Superlative of bonus, a, um, § 15  
**opus** (oper-), *3, work* [operation], § 49  
 opus (with Abl.), *need*  
 quid opus, *what need*  
**ōra**, *1, shore, coast*, § 11  
**Orangia**, *1, the Orange Free State, the Orange River Colony*, § 37

**orbis**, *3, m., circle* [orb]; *orbis terrārum—the world*, § 4  
**ordō** (-din-), *3, m., rank* [ordinary], § 8  
**Ordovicēs**, *2, a tribe of North Wales*, § 5  
**oriens** (orient-), *3, the East* [oriental], § 12  
**origō** (origin-), *3, origin*, § 19; origine, by origin, § 34  
**oriundus**, *a, um, sprung*, § 6  
**ornātus**, *4, adornment, attire*, § 50  
**ornātus**, *a, um, ornamented, dressed*, § 50  
**ornō**, *1, I equip, ad-orn*, § 7  
**ostrea**, *1, oyster*, § 31  
**ovis** (Gen. Plur. ovium), *3, sheep*, § 50  
**ōvum**, *2, egg*, § 51

## P

**pācātus**, *a, um, subdued, pacified*, § 12  
**pācificus**, *a, um, peaceful, peace-giving* [pacific], § 56  
**pācō**, *1, I pacify, subdue*, § 10  
**paene**, *adv., almost*, § 47  
**paeninsula**, *1, peninsula* (paene, almost; insula, island), § 24  
**parātus**, *a, um, prepared, ready*, § 29  
**parens** (parent-), *3, parent*, § 21  
**parō**, *1, I prepare*, § 5; *prepare for*, § 41  
**pars** (part-), *3, part*, § 1  
**parvus**, *a, um, small, little*, § 25  
**passus**, *4, pace, yard*, § 23  
**pater** (patr-), *3, father*, § 3  
**patria**, *1, country, fatherland*, § 8  
**patrōcīnum**, *2, protection*, § 35; *protectorate*, § 56  
**patruissimus**, *a, um* (comic superlative from patruus), *kindest*, § 17  
**patruus**, *2, uncle*, § 1; *Oom*, § 31  
**pauci**, *ae, a, a few*, § 5; *few*, § 30  
**paulātīm**, *adv., gradually*, § 15

**paulum**, *a little*, § 22  
**Paulus**, *2, Paul*, § 27  
**pavimentum**, *2, pavement*, § 15  
**pax** (pāc-), *3, peace*, § 12  
**peccō**, *1, I sin*, § 27  
**pedes** (pedit-), *3, foot-soldier*, § 45  
**pedester**, *tris, tre, 3, infantry* (used as an adj.), *pedestrian*, § 2  
**pellō**, *3, pepuli, pulsus*, *a, um, I drive, ex-pel*, § 35  
**penātēs** (Gen. penātūm), *3, plur., household gods—home*, § 8  
**penetrō**, *1, I penetrate*, § 2  
**per** (with Acc.), *through*, § 11; *during*, § 1; *along*, § 44  
**per-currō**, *3, -eucurrī or -currī, I overrun*, § 36  
**per-dō**, *3, -didi, -ditus, a, um, I destroy* [per-dition]; aquam  
**perdō**, *I waste time* (lit. water), § 32  
**peregrinus**, *a, um, foreign*, § 26  
**peregrinus**, *2, foreigner*, § 32  
**periculōsus**, *a, um, perilous, dangerous*, § 48  
**periculum**, *2, peril, danger*, § 12

- peritus, a, um, *skilled* (Gen. —*in*), § 11  
 per-noctō, *I spend the night*, § 16  
 perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual, everlasting*, § 12  
 per-tineō, 2, —*tinui*, *I stretch, extend*, § 23; *pertinet ad, it concerns, pertains to*, § 32 (compare the word 'impertinent,' which properly means 'not pertaining to,' hence 'unbecoming')  
 perturbō, 1, *I throw into disorder*, § 46  
 per-veniō, 4, —*vēni*, *I arrive* (lit. 'come through'), § 42  
 pēs (ped-), 3, m., *foot*, § 22; *pedibus, on foot*, § 45  
**Petreius collis**, *Pieters Hill*, North of the Tugela and to the South-East of Ladysmith, § 55  
 pharus, 2, f., *light-house*, § 23  
 Pictī, 2, plur., *Picts*, § 19  
 pictus, a, um, *painted*; *tabula picta, picture*, § 1  
 piget (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Perf. *piguit*), *it vexes*; mē piget, *it vexes me, I am sorry*, § 23; mē nōn piget, *I don't mind*, § 22  
 pila, 1, *ball [pill]*, § 17; *cricket ball*, § 30  
 pius, a, um, *loving [pious]*, § 56  
 plēnus, a, um, *full*, § 29; *with Gen.* § 56, *with Abl. filled*, § 50  
 plērumque, *mostly, generally*, § 1  
 plūrimus, a, um, *very much*, § 38 (Superlative of *multus*)  
 plūs (plūr-), *more* [hence 'Plural'], § 32  
 poēta, 1, *poet*, § 4  
**Pompōnia Graecina**, wife of Aulus Plautius, § 27  
 pondus (ponder-), 3, *weight*, § 9  
 pōnō, 3, *posuī, positus, a, um, I place [position]*, § 40  
 pons (pont-), 3, m., *bridge*; **Pons Aelius**, *Newcastle*, § 20
- pontifex (pontifie-), 3, *pontiff, pope*, § 25  
 populus, 2, a *people*, § 6  
 porcus, 2, *pig [pork]*, § 50  
 porta, 1, *gate (of a city)*  
 portentum, 2, *portent, marvel*, § 8  
 portō, 1, *I carry*, § 18  
 portus, 4, *port, harbour*, § 23; **Portus Nātālis**, *Durban*, § 42  
 possum (—pot-sum), posse (—pot-esse), potuī, *I am able*, § 3  
 post (with Acc.), after, § 1; since, § 48  
 posteā, adv., *afterwards*, § 20  
 posterus, a, um, *next*, § 55: *posterior* (m., f.), *posterior* (n.), later, § 16  
 postquam, *after — after the time when*, § 2; since, § 25  
 postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally*, § 53  
 postridiē, *on the next day*, § 13  
 prae-beō, 2, *prae-bui, prae-bitus, a, um, I provide, afford*, § 23 (—prae-hibeō, etc., from habeō, lit. *I hold forth*)  
 praecipitō, 1, *I hurl down [precipitate]*, § 8; *praecipitans, knocking down*, § 39  
 praecipiē, adv., *chiefly, especially*, § 34  
 praecipiuς, a, um, *chief, special, particular*, § 24  
 praecīlārus, a, um, *very famous, splendid*, § 12  
 praeda, 1, *prey, booty*, § 9  
 praefectus, 2, *officer [prefect]; president*, § 31; *governor of a colony*, § 36  
 prae-mitto, 3, —misi, —missus, a, um, *I send forward*, § 45  
 prae-nōmen (—nōmin-), 3, *fore-name, Christian name*  
 prae-stō, —stāre, —stiti, *I exhibit, show*, § 6; *render*, § 49  
 prae-sum, —esse, —fuī (with Dat.), *I am in command (of), am at the head (of)*, § 3  
**Praetōria**, 1, *Pretoria*, the capital of the Transvaal, § 56

prandium, 2, *lunch*, § 1  
 pretium, 2, *price*, § 50 (*grandī pretiō, at a high price*)  
 pridiē, adv., *on the day before*, § 16 ;  
     with Acc., § 42  
 primō, *at first*, § 13  
 primus, a, um, *first*, § 1  
 princeps (princip-), 3, *emperor*, § 2 ;  
     *prince, chieftain*, § 15  
 principatus, 4, *headship, sovereignty*, § 35 ; *principate, reign (of a ' princeps ')*, § 27  
 principia, 2, plur., *headquarters*  
 prior (priōr-), 3, *previous [prior]*, § 5  
 prō (with Abl.), *instead of, for, § 7 ; for the sake of*, § 4  
 procella, 1, *storm* ; Mons Procel-lārum, *Stormberg*, in the north of Cape Colony, § 46  
 Prōmunturium Procellārum, *Cape of Storms*, the old name of the Cape of Good Hope, § 48  
 procul, *far*, § 22 ; *afar*, § 26  
 prō-currō, 3, -eucurrī or -currī, *I run forward, I charge*, § 38  
 proelium, 2, *battle*, § 5  
 pro-festus, a, um, *not holy, not festal* ; diēs profestus, *a working-day*, § 30  
 pro-fundō, 3, -fūdī, -fūsus, a, um, *I pour out, shed [profuse]*, § 54  
 pro-hibeō, 2, -hibuī, -hibitus, a, um (from habeō ; lit. *I hold at a distance*), *I prohibit, forbid*, with Infin., § 26 ; *I prevent*, with Infin., § 36 ; with Abl. (-from), § 52 ; with nē, *lest, that*, § 52  
 prōmissum, 2, *promise*, § 26  
 prō-mittō, -misi, -missus, a, um, *I promise*, § 37

prōmunturium, 2, *promontory*, § 22 ; *cape*, § 41  
 prope (with Acc.), *near*, § 9 ; *nearly*, § 49  
 properō, 1, *I hasten*, § 9 ; *I act rapidly*, § 53 (different in meaning from festinō, *I hurry -act without sufficient thought*)  
 propior, propius, *nearer*, § 53  
 prōpositum, 2, *proposal*, § 18  
 propter (with Acc.), *on account of*, § 5  
 prōpulsō, 1, *I drive off, keep off, repel*, § 12  
 prosperē, *successfully, prosperously*, § 56  
 prosperous, a, um, *successful, prosperous*, § 31 ; rēs prospereae, *success, prosperity*, § 48  
 prō-sum, -esse, -fui (with Dat.), *I am helpful, do good*, § 48  
 prōverbium, 2, *proverb, familiar saying*, § 41  
 prōvincia, 1, *province*, § 10  
 proximus, a, um, *nearest, next*, § 11 ; *last, preceding*, § 39  
 pruina, 1, *frost*, § 54  
 puer, 2, *boy*, § 17  
 pugna, 1, *fight, battle*, § 12  
 pugnans (pugnant-), 3, adj., *fighting*, § 56  
 pugnō, 1, *I fight*, § 4  
 pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *fine, beautiful, glorious*, § 10  
 pulchrē, *beautifully, gloriously*  
 pulvis (pulver-), 3, m., *dust, cloud of dust*, § 51  
 punetum, 2, *point [punctual]* ; punetum temporis, *a moment*, § 46  
 puteus, 2, *well*, § 23 ; *pit*, § 43  
 putō, 1, *I fancy, think, suppose*, § 56

## Q

quadrāgēsimus, a, um, *fortieth*, § 3 | quadrāgintā (indeclinable), *forty*, § 22

**quadrātus**, a, um, *square, four-cornered*, § 23; *agmine quadrātō, in quarter column*, § 46  
**quadringentēsimus**, a, um, *four hundredth*, § 24  
**quadringentī**, ae, a, *four hundred*, § 22  
**quaesō**, 3, *I pray, or please (tell me)*, § 32  
**quaestiō (-iōn-)**, 3, *question, enquiry*, § 19  
**quam**, *how*, § 30; *as*; *than*, § 14  
**quamquam**, *although*, § 2  
**quaudō**, *when*, § 18  
**quantopere**, *how much*, § 18  
**quantus**, a, um, *how great*, § 56; *tantus . . . quantus, so great . . . as*, § 48  
**quartus**, a, um, *fourth*, § 3  
**quartus decimus**, *fourteenth*, § 3  
**quattuor**, *four*, § 2  
**quattuordecim**, *fourteen*  
**qui**, *quae, quod, which? or what?*, § 19  
**qui**, *quae, quod, who, which*, § 20  
**quia**, *because*, § 1

**qui-dam**, *quae-dam, quod-dam, a certain*, § 35  
**quingentēsimus**, a, um, *five hundredeth*, § 25  
**quingentī**, ae, a, *five hundred*, § 44  
**quinquāgēsimus**, a, um, *fiftieth*  
**quinquāgintā** (indecl.), *fifty*, § 20  
**quinque**, *five*, § 30  
**quintus**, a, um, *fifth*, § 7  
**quintus decimus**, *fifteenth*, § 3  
**quis** (m., f.), *quid* (n.), *who?*  
*what?*, §§ 14, 15, 19; *anyone, anything; num quid, whether anything?*, § 31; *nē quid, lest anything*, § 52  
**quis-que**, *quae-que, quid-que or quod-que*, *each, each one*, § 56  
**quōd**, *whither, to which*, § 42  
**quod**, *that*, § 23  
**quondam**, *once on a time, formerly*, § 22  
**quoque**, *too, also*, § 3  
*tum quoque, then too, even then*  
**quota hōra est?** *what o'clock is it?*, § 18  
**quotā hōrā**, *at what o'clock?*, § 18

## R

**re-belliō (-iōn-)**, 3, *renewal of war [rebellion]*, § 8  
**re-bellō**, 1, *I renew war [rebel]*, § 7  
**re-cipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, a, um, *I betake (mē, myself)*, § 43; *I withdraw*, § 44; *I recover, rescue*, § 47; *I receive*, § 56  
**recitō**, 1, *I read aloud [recite]*, § 1  
**recreō**, 1, *I refresh (mē, myself)*, § 22  
**rectē**, *rightly*, § 16; *right!*, § 28  
**red-ambulō**, 1, *I walk back*, § 29  
**red-dō**, 3, -didi, -ditus, a, um, *I deliver* (lit. *I give back*; *red-re-*), § 38 (note); *I render*, § 54  
**re-dūcō**, 3, -duxī, -ductus, a, um, *I lead back* [*reduce, reduction*], § 39

**rēgīna**, 1, *queen*, § 3  
**regiō (-iōn-)**, 3, *region, district*, § 11  
**rēgius**, a, um, *royal*, § 31  
**regnō**, 1, *I reign*, § 3  
**regnum**, 2, *kingdom [reign]*, § 3  
**reliquiae**, 1, pl., *relics, remains*, § 5  
**reliquois**, a, um, *the rest, the remaining*  
**remōtus**, a, um, *remote*, § 4  
**re-moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, a, um, *I remove [remote]*, § 27  
**re-portātus**, a, um, *carried off, won*, § 5  
**re-portō**, 1, *I carry off (or back), win*, § 2  
**rēs**, 5, *thing, affair*, § 30; *rēspūblica (rēspūblica), common-*

*wealth, republic, § 31; rē vērā (rēvērā), in reality, really, § 32; rēs—rēspublica, § 49*  
**re-scribō**, 3, -scripsi, -scriptus, a, um, *I write back*, § 43  
**re-servō**, 1, *I reserve*, § 34  
**re-spondeō**, 2, -spondi, -sponsus, a, um, *I answer, respond [response]*, § 22  
**re-situō**, 3, -stitui, -stitutus, a, um, *I restore [restitution]*, § 49  
**re-surgō**, 3, surrexi, *I rise again [resurrection]*, § 56  
**re-tardō**, 1, *I retard, delay, impede* (from *tardus*, a, um, *slow, tardy*), § 6  
*rēvērā, really, § 2 (or, as two words, rē vērā, § 32)*  
**re-vinciō**, 4, -vinxi, -vinetus, a, um, *I bind fast*, § 56

*re-vocō, 1, I recall [revoke], § 28; call off, withdraw, § 15, § 28; pick up, catch, § 17*  
**rex (rēg-), 3, king, § 3**  
**Rhēnus, 2, the Rhine, § 33**  
**rideō, 2, rīsi, I laugh, § 22, § 24**  
**ripa, 1, bank, § 44**  
**ritus, 4, manner [rite], § 56**  
**rōbur (rōbor-), 3, oak, strength, § 36**  
**rōbustus, a, um, robust, sturdy, § 33**  
**rogō, 1, I ask, § 52**  
**Rōma, 1, Rome, § 5**  
**Rōmānus, a, um, Roman, § 2**  
**rūfus, a, um, reddish [hence 'William Rufus'], § 33**  
**ruīnae, 1, pl., ruins, § 18**  
**Rutupiae, 1, pl., Richborough, § 18**  
**Rutupinūs, a, um, belonging to Richborough, § 18**

## S

*sacer, sacra, sacram, sacred, § 27*  
*saeculum, 2, century, § 16*  
*saepe, often, § 1*  
*saevus, a, um, savage, cruel, § 12*  
*saltus, 4, mountain-pass, § 46; Saltus Cervinus, Elands-laagte (—Stag's lair), in the North of Natal, § 38*  
**salūs (salūt-), 3, health, welfare; salūtem dicō, I send greeting, § 37; deliverance, § 53; annō salūtis in the year of grace, § 56**  
**salūtō, 1, I salute, greet, § 56**  
**salveō, 2, I am safe and sound, I am in good health; salvē (plur. salvēte), hail!, § 22**  
**salvus, a, um, safe and sound; salvum praestō, I render safe and sound, I save, § 49, § 50; salvus sis, may you be safe and sound! —God bless you!, § 51**

**sanctus, a, um, holy, § 27; Sanctus, 2, Saint, § 23**  
**sanguis (sanguin-), 3, m., blood [sanguin-ary, con-sanguinity] § 34**  
**satiō, 1, I satisfy, § 12**  
**satis, enough, § 2; sufficiently, pretty well, § 17**  
**Saxō (Saxon-), 3, Saxon, § 24**  
**schola, 1, school, § 40; pl. lessons, § 1**  
**scientia, 1, science, knowledge, § 9**  
**sciō, 4, scīvī, I know, § 41; vincere sciō, I know how to conquer, § 51**  
**Scōtus, 2, Scot, § 19**  
**scribō, 3, scrip̄i, scriptus, a, um, I write [script—a thing written; scribe—a writer, lawyer], § 32**  
**scriptor (scriptōr-), 3, writer, § 3**

- sē, *himself, herself, itself, § 9;*  
*themselves, § 11; inter sē,*  
*among themselves*  
 secundus, a, um, *second, § 2*  
 sed, *but, § 2*  
 sedeō, 2, sēdī, *I sit, § 22*  
**Segedūnum**, 2, *Wall's End* (*-End of the Roman Wall*), § 20  
 sēmi-hōra, 1, *half an hour* (*sēmi-half*, as in 'semicircle',  
 'semicolon,' etc.), § 49  
 sēmi-somnus, a, um, *half-asleep*  
 (*sēmi-, half*; somnus, sleep),  
 § 49  
 semper, adv., *always, § 24*  
 senex (*sen-em, -is, -i, -e, etc.*),  
*old man, § 17*  
 sententia, 1, *sentence*  
 sēparō, 1, *I separate, § 4*  
 septem (*indecl.*), *seven, § 5*  
**September**, bris, bre, 3, *of September, § 1*  
 septentriōnālis, e, 3, *northern, § 10*  
 septentriōnēs, 3, *plur., m., the North* (*properly, the seven stars of Charles' Wain*), § 39  
 septimus, a, um, *seventh, § 6*  
 septimus decimus, *seventeenth, § 51*  
 septingenti, ae, a, *seven hundred, § 46*  
 septuāgintā, *seventy, § 9*  
 sepulchrum, 2, *tomb, sepulchre, § 56*  
 serēnus, a, um, *clear [serene], § 18*  
 sermō (*sermōn-*), 3, *speech, conversation, talk [sermon], § 26*  
 sērō, *late, too late, § 41*  
 servitūs (*servitūt-*), 3, *slavery, servitude, § 2*  
 servō, 1, *I preserve, keep, watch, § 9*  
 servus, 2, *slave, § 7*  
 sescenti (*for sex-centī*), ae, a, *six hundred, § 55*  
 sexāgēsimus, a, um, *sixtieth, § 7*  
 sexāgintā (*indecl.*), *sixty, § 22*  
 sextus, a, um, *sixth, § 11*  
 sī, if, § 6
- sic, so, thus, § 9; *as follows, § 22*  
 sicut, as (lit. so as, just as), § 33  
**significatiō (-iōn-)**, 3, *signification, meaning*  
**significō, 1, I signify, mean, § 24;**  
*I express, § 53*  
 signum, 2, *sign, § 13; flag, standard, § 11; badge, § 34*  
 silentium, 2, *silence, § 13*  
 sileō, 2, siliū, *I am silent; passive, silitur, it is silenced, § 30*  
**Silurēs**, 3, *Silures, a tribe of South Wales, § 5*  
 silva, 1, *wood, forest, § 5*  
 simulācrum, 2, *image, § 7, § 27*  
 sine (with Abl.), *without, § 18*  
 singulāris, e, 3, *singular, strange, unique, § 37*  
 sinister, tra, trum, *left [sinister], § 44*  
 situs, a, um, *situated, § 22*  
 societās (-tāt-), 3, *alliance, society, union, § 34; Societās Africāna, Africander Bond, § 35*  
 socius, 2, *ally, § 56*  
 sōl, 3, *the sun, § 49*  
**sōlitūdō (-tūdin-)**, 3, *solitude, desert, § 12*  
 solitus, a, um, *usual, § 51* (*solitō densor, denser than usual*)  
 solum, 2, *soil, § 23*  
 solum, *only; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also, § 16*  
**sōlus, a, um, (Gen. Sing. sōlius, Dat. Sing. sōli)**, *alone, § 56*  
 somnium, 2, *drēam, § 35*  
 somnus, 2, *sleep, § 43*  
 spectāculum, 2, *spectacle, show, § 6; sight, § 29*  
 spectō, 1, *I look, watch, gaze at, see, § 6*  
 spērō, 1, *I hope, § 12*  
 spēs, 5, *hope, § 41; promise, § 47*  
 sp̄iritus, 4, *pride, airs [spirit], § 35*  
**stābilitās (-tāt-)**, 3, *stability, steadfastness, § 45*

**statim**, adv., *immediately, at once*, § 18  
**statiō (-iōn-)**, 3, *station, sentry-duty*, § 51; *Statiō Bechuānārum, Mafeking*, in Bechuanaland, § 43  
**stō, stāre, stetī, i**, *I stand*, § 8  
**studeō**, 2, *studui, I am eager* (Dat. —*for*), § 35  
**studium**, 2, *eagerness, study, pursuit*, § 15; plur. *studia, studies*, § 1  
**stultitia**, i, *folly*, § 37  
**sub** (with Abl.), *under*, § 11; *down in*; (with Acc.), *down into, down to, down along, towards*, § 23; § 38  
**subiectus**, a, um, *subject*, § 3  
**subitō**, *suddenly*, § 39  
**subministrō**, i, *I supply*, § 4  
**subterrāneus**, a, um, *subterranean, underground*, § 23  
**Suēbī**, 2, plur., *Swabians*, § 24  
**Suētōnius Paulinus**, 2, a Roman general of the time of Nero, § 7

**Suētōnius Tranquillus**, 2, a Roman writer of the second century A.D., § 3  
**sum, esse, fuī, I am**, § 1  
**summus**, a, um, *highest, chief, greatest, very great*, § 37  
**sūmō, 3, sumpsi, sumptus**, a, um, *I assume, take*, § 35; *I undertake*, § 56  
**super** (with Acc.), *over, above*, § 46  
**superior** (*superiōr-*), 3, comp. adj., *previous, past; superior, victorious*  
**superō, i, I overcome**, § 5; *I surpass, am superior*, § 9; *I surmount*, § 44  
**superstitiō (-iōn-)**, 3, *superstition*, § 27  
**sus-tineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus**, a, um, *I sustain, endure*, (from *sub* and *teneō*), § 54  
**suus**, a, um, *his (or his own), her (or her own), its (or its own), their (or their own)*, § 2; *sui, his (or their) men*, § 9, § 13

## T

**tabula**, i, *tablet, plate; tabula pieta, picture*, § 1  
**Tacitus**, 2, a Roman historian, § 1  
**Talāna**, i, a hill near Dundee, in Natal, § 38  
**tam**, so, § 43  
**tamen**, *nevertheless, however*, § 1  
**Tamesa**, i, m., *Thames*, § 2; Caesar calls the river 'Tamesis' (3rd Decl.), but Tacitus calls it 'Tamesa' (1st Decl.)  
**Tanatis** (Acc. *Tanatim*; Abl. *Tanati*), 3, *Thanet*, § 24  
**tandem**, *at length*, § 5  
**tantum**, *so much, or only*, § 8, § 24  
**tantus**, a, um, *so great*, § 4  
**Tasciovānus**, 2, a British king, § 3  
**Tasmania**, i, *Tasmania*, § 49

**tē, thee, you; tēcum, with thee, with you**  
**templum**, 2, *temple*, § 7  
**tempus** (*tempor-*), 3, *time [temporary]*, § 2; *ad tempus, at the right time, in time*, § 22; *in ipsō tempore, in the nick of time*, § 39  
**tenebrae**, i, plur., *darkness*, § 39; *Rex Tenebrārum, the Devil*, § 28  
**teneō, 2, tenuī, tentus**, a, um, *I hold*, § 23  
**ter**, adv., *three times, thrice*, § 54  
**terra**, i, *land*, § 4  
**terribilis**, e, 3, *terrible*, § 38  
**terror** (*terrōr-*), 3, *terror, panic*, § 39

tertius, a, um, *third*, § 2  
 tertius decimus, *thirteenth*, § 2  
**tessellātus**, a, um, *tesselated, made of mosaic work*, § 15 (from *tessella*, a small cube)  
**testimōnium**, 2, *testimony, evidence*, § 10  
**Tiberius**, 2, *Tiberius*, the second Roman emperor, § 2  
**Togodumnus**, 2, a son of Cunobelinus, § 3  
**tolerō**, 1, *I tolerate, endure, bear*, § 2  
**tonitrus**, 4, m., *thunder*, § 46  
**tormentum**, 2, *hurling machine, gun*, § 38  
**tot** (indeclin. adj.), *so many*, § 49  
**tōtus**, a, um (Gen. Sing. *tōtius*, Dat. Sing. *tōti*), *whole*, § 4  
**trā-dō**, 3, -*didī*, -*ditus*, a, um, *I hand down, lit. give across [tradition]*, § 56  
**trahō**, 3, *traxi, tractus*, a, um, *I drag, draw*, § 39 [*traction engine*]  
**trāiciō** (= *trā-ilēciō*), 3, -*lēci*, -*iectus*, a, um, *I throw across*, § 44; *I cross*, § 54  
**trans** (with Acc.), *across*, § 11  
**transportō**, 1, *I transport*, § 2  
**trecentī**, ae, a, *three hundred*, § 46  
**tredecim** (indecl.), *thirteen*, § 25  
**tremō**, 3, *tremul*, *I tremble*, § 38  
**trēs** (m., f.), *tria* (n.), Gen. *trium*; Dat., Abl. *tribus*; *three*, § 13, § 30  
**tribūtum**, 2, *tribute*, § 2  
**triēsimus**, a, um, *thirtieth*, § 6  
**trielinium**, 2, *dining-room*

**trigintā** (indecl.), *thirty*, § 22  
**trigōn**, 3, m. (a Greek word), *ball, tennis ball*, § 30  
**trigonālis**, e, of (or connected with) *the tennis ball*, § 1  
**Trinobantēs**, 3, plur., a tribe in Essex, § 7  
**triplex** (*triplic-*), 3, adj., *triple*, § 36  
**Trisantona**, 1, m., *the Trent*; see map of *Britannia Romana*. The form 'Trisantona' is uncertain, depending on the reading of a passage in Tac. Ann., xii. 31  
**tristis**, e, 3, *sad*, § 30; *bitter*, § 56  
**triumphālis**, e, 3, *triumphal*, § 55  
**triumphō**, 1, *I triumph, exult*, § 9  
**trueidātiō** (-iōn-), 3, *slaughter*, § 13  
**trucidō**, 1, *I slaughter, murder*, § 7  
**tū**, *thou, you* (Sing.), § 17  
**Tugēla**, 1, m., *the Tugela*, a river in Natal, § 47  
**tum**, *then* (—at that time or there-upon), § 6  
**tumultus**, 4, *tumult*, § 38  
**tumulus**, 2, *rising ground, kopje*, § 44  
**turbulentus**, a, um, *turbulent, unsettled*, § 10; Flümen Turbulentum, *the Modder River* (in the Orange River Colony: 'Modder'—mud), § 44  
**turpis**, e, 3, *disgraceful*, § 56  
**turris** (Gen. Plur. *turrium*), 3, *tower, turret*, § 22  
**tūtus**, a, um, *safe*, § 12  
**tuus**, a, um, *thy, your*

## U

*ubi, where*, § 1  
*ullus*, a, um, *any* (Gen. Sing. *ullius*, Dat. Sing. *ulli*)  
**ultimus**, a, um, *last* [ultimate], § 1: *litterae ultimae*, *a final despatch—an ultimatum*, § 37

**umquam**, adv., *ever, at any time*, § 14  
**ūnā**, *together*; **ūnā cum**, *together with*, § 6  
**unda**, 1, *wave*, § 36  
**unde**, *whence*, § 26

- undecim** (indecl.), *eleven*, § 13  
**undecimus**, a, um, *eleventh*  
**undētrīcēsimus**, a, um, *twenty-ninth*, § 33  
**undēvigintī** (indecl.), *nineteen*, § 52  
**undique**, adv., *on all sides*, § 39  
**ūniversus**, a, um, *all together* [universal]  
**ūnus**, a, um (Gen. Sing. **ūnius**, Dat. Sing. **ūni**), *one*, § 5

- urbs** (urb-), 3, *city* [urban], § 5  
**usque ad**, *right on to*, § 11  
**ūsus**, 4, *use*, § 23 (**ūsuī**)  
**ut**, *how*, § 22, § 31; *as*, § 3; *ut possum*, *as best I can*, § 38, § 46; *with the Subjunctive, that, in order that*, § 50; *so that*, § 50  
**ūtilis**, e, 3, *useful*, § 15  
**uxor** (**uxōr-**), 3, *wife*, § 6

## ▼

- vacca**, 1, *cow*, § 50  
**vadum**, 2, *shallow place, shoal, ford, drift*, § 41  
**Vahalis**, 3, m., *Vaal* (a river in Holland and in South Africa), § 32  
**valeō**, 2, **valuī**, *I fare well, am in good health, am strong*; **valēre iubēō**, *I bid farewell* (lit. to fare well), § 23; **valē** (plur. **valēte**), *farewell*, § 30; *ut valēs?* *how do you do?*, § 31; *multum valet, avails much*, § 34  
**validus**, a, uni, *strong*, § 49  
**vallum**, 2, *rampart, earthen wall*, § 20  
**vastō**, 1, *I lay waste* [de-vast-ate], § 7  
**vastus**, a, um, *wild, waste* [vast]  
**Vectis**, 3, (Acc. Sing., Vectim; Abl. Sing., Vecti), *Isle of Wight*, § 15  
**vehiculum**, 2, *vehicle, cart*, § 9, *carriage*, § 18  
**vel**, *or*, § 1  
**velut**, *as, even as, as it were* [vel even; ut, as], § 11  
**venerābilis**, e, 3, *venerable*, § 27  
**venia**, 1, *pardon, mercy*, § 6  
**veniō**, 4, **vēnī**, *I come*, § 40  
**Venta Belgrārum**, 1, *Winchester*, § 34  
**vēnum-dō**, -dare, -dedī, *I sell*, § 2 [**vēnum**, *for sale*; **dō**, *I offer*]

- verbum**, 2, *word*, § 11, § 25; **suis verbis**—*in his name*, § 52  
**vērē**, adv., *truly*, § 6  
**Vergilius**, 2 (**Publius Vergilius Marō**), a Roman poet of the age of Augustus, § 4  
**vērius**, compar. adv., *more truly*, § 56  
**verō**, *but*; *but in truth*, § 42  
**versus**, 4, *verse*, § 38  
**vertō**, 3, **vertī**, *versus, a, um, 1 turn; bene vertat, may it turn out well*, § 56  
**Verulāmium**, 2, *St. Albans*, in Hertfordshire, twenty miles from London  
**vērus**, a, um, *true*, § 10; **vēra**, *the truth* (lit. true things), § 11; **vērō**, *in truth*, § 42  
**vesper**, 2, *evening*, § 30 [vespers]  
**vester**, *vestra, vestrum, your* (of several persons), § 12  
**vestibulum**, 2, *vestibule, entrance hall*  
**vestimentum**, 2, *garment* [vestment], § 50  
**veterānus**, 2, *veteran, old soldier*, § 5  
**vexillum**, 2, *standard, flag*, § 38  
**vexō**, 1, *I annoy, vex*, § 2  
**via**, 1, *road, way*, § 1; **dē viā**, *from the road*; *in viam mē dō*, *I give myself to the road, I start*, § 18; *inter viam, on the journey*, § 19

**vīcēslīnus**, a, um, *twentieth*, § 39  
**victitō**, i, *I live*, § 50  
**victor** (*victōr-*), 3, *victor*, § 14  
**victōria**, i, *victory*, § 2  
**Victōriānus**, a, um, *Victorian* ;  
 crux Victōriāna, *the Victoria Cross*, instituted by Queen Victoria for conspicuous bravery, § 56  
**victrix** (*victīc-*), 3, adj., fem., *victorious*, § 5  
**videō**, 2, vidi, vīsus, a, um, *I see*, § 22 ; videō nē, *I see to it that . . . not*, § 52, § 56  
**vīginti** (indeclinable), *twenty*, § 22  
**villa**, i, *country-house*, *villa*, § 15  
**vincō**, 3, vīci, *victus*, a, um, *I conquer, defeat*, § 35  
**vir**, 2, *man*, § 2  
**Virocōnium**, 2, *Urriconium (Wroxeter)*, near Shrewsbury, § 5  
**virtūs** (*virtūt-*), 3, *pluck, courage [virtue]*, § 4

**vīs**, 3, Acc. vim, § 54 ; Abl. vī, § 50, *violence, force* : Plur.  
**vīr-ēs**, -ium, -ibus, *strength*  
**vīsitō**, i, *I visit*, § 1  
**vīta**, i, *life*, § 1 ; *Vita Agricolae, the Life of Agricola*, a work by Tacitus  
**vītō**, i, *I avoid*, § 13  
**vīvō**, 3, vixi, *I live*  
**vix**, *scarcely, hardly*, § 43  
**vōbīs**, *to you* ; vōbīscum, *with you*  
**vocans** (*vocant-*), 3, *calling*, § 42  
**vocō**, i, *I call*, § 4 ; *I summon*, § 8  
**volō**, i, *I fly*, § 9  
**voluntārius**, 2, *volunteer [voluntary]*, § 49  
**vōs** (Nom. and Acc.), *you*, § 6  
**vox** (*vōc-*), 3, *voice*, § 49  
**vulnerō**, i, *I wound*, § 13 ; vulnerātus, a, um, *wounded*, § 38  
**vulnus** (*vulner-*), 3, *wound [vulnerable]*, § 54

## Z

**Zelanda**, i, *Zealand* ; 'Nova Zeelanda' was the name |

given by Tasman to *New Zealand*, § 49

## II. ENGLISH-LATIN

Nearly all the words contained in the Exercises have occurred in previous passages of the text of *Pro Patria* and ought therefore to be familiar to the pupil. The object of this Vocabulary is simply to put him on the track of the word, if he has forgotten it: and, accordingly, the minimum of information is given here. In the case of a few words, however, introduced from *Ora Maritima* or not appearing in either book, the declension or conjugation is indicated.

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| āble; I am—, possum;   | around, <i>circum</i>   | better, <i>melior</i> , <i>melius</i>                     |
| to be—, posse  | arrival, <i>adventus</i>                                      | between, <i>inter</i>                                     |
| about (Prep.), <i>dē</i> ;   | arrive, <i>adventāre</i> , or<br><i>advenīre</i> (after § 41) | bid, <i>iubeō</i>   |
| (Adv.) <i>circiter</i>   | as, <i>ut</i> , or <i>sicut</i>                               | big, <i>magnus</i>  |
| accordingly, <i>itaque</i>   | ascend, <i>ascendere</i>                                      | bird, <i>avis</i> (fem.)                                  |
| accuse, <i>accusāre</i>  | at once, <i>statim</i>  | black, <i>niger</i>                                       |
| across, <i>trans</i>   | at the present day,<br><i>hodiē</i>                           | blue, <i>caeruleus</i>                                    |
| admit, <i>admittere</i>  | attack, <i>impetus</i>  | body (=troop), <i>manus</i>                               |
| adorn, <i>ornāre</i>   | attack, to, <i>oppugnāre</i>                                  | Boer, <i>Batāvus</i>                                      |
| affirm, <i>affirmāre</i>   | attendant, <i>minister</i>                                    | book, <i>liber</i>  |
| afraid, I am, <i>formidō</i>   | attention, <i>opera</i>                                       | booty, <i>praeda</i>                                      |
| after (Prep.), <i>post</i> ;<br>(-after the time<br>when), <i>postquam</i> | August, <i>Augustus</i>                                       | born, <i>natus</i>  |
| afterwards, <i>postea</i>  | aunt, <i>amita</i>  | boundaries, <i>finēs</i>                                  |
| against, <i>contrā</i>   | avoid, <i>vītare</i>  | boy, <i>puer</i>  |
| age, <i>aetās</i>  | await, <i>exspectāre</i>                                      | brave, <i>fortis</i>                                      |
| air, <i>āēr</i>  | away, to be, <i>abesse</i>                                    | bravo, <i>eugē</i>  |
| all, <i>omnēs</i>  | ball, <i>pila</i>   | bright, <i>clārus</i>                                     |
| already, <i>iam</i>  | balloon, <i>nāvis āeria</i>                                   | bring up, <i>apportāre</i>                                |
| also, <i>etiam</i> ; but also,<br><i>sed etiam</i>                         | barbarians, <i>barbarī</i>                                    | Britain, <i>Britannia</i>                                 |
| although, <i>quamquam</i>  | barbarous, <i>barbarus</i>                                    | British, <i>Britanicus</i>                                |
| always, <i>semper</i>  | baths, <i>balneae</i>   | Briton, <i>Britannus</i>                                  |
| among, <i>in</i> + <i>numerō</i><br>(with gen.), or <i>inter</i>           | battalion, <i>cohors</i>                                      | brother, <i>frāter</i>                                    |
| amphitheatre, <i>amphi-</i><br><i>theātrum</i>                             | battle, <i>proelium</i>                                       | build, to, <i>aedificāre</i>                              |
| ancient, <i>antīquus</i>   | beautiful, <i>pulcher</i>                                     | building, <i>aedificiūm</i>                               |
| angel, <i>angelus</i>  | because, <i>quia</i>  | burn, to, <i>cremāre</i>                                  |
| angle, <i>angulus</i>  | before, <i>ante</i>   | but, <i>sed</i>   |
| Angles, <i>Anglī</i>   | begin, <i>incipere</i>  | by, <i>ā</i> ( <i>ab</i> ); = near, <i>ad</i>             |
| Annals, <i>Annālēs</i>   | beginning, <i>initium</i>                                     | Caledonian (adj.), <i>Calē-<br/>donius</i> ; Caledonians, |
| annoy, <i>vexāre</i>   | behoves, it, <i>oportet</i>                                   | the, <i>Calēdonēs</i>                                     |
| another, <i>alius</i> , <i>alia</i> ,                                      | Belgian, <i>Belga</i>   | call, to, <i>vocāre</i>                                   |
| <i>aliud</i> , or <i>alter</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i>                      | Belgium, <i>Belgium</i>                                       | calm, <i>tranquillus</i>                                  |
| answer, <i>respondēre</i>  | bell, <i>tintinnābulum</i>                                    | camp, <i>castra</i>                                       |
| any longer, <i>iam</i>   | beloved, <i>cārissimus</i>                                    | can, I, <i>possum</i>                                     |
| arms, <i>arma</i>  | besiege, <i>obsidēre</i>                                      | cannon, <i>tormentum</i>                                  |
| army, <i>exercitus</i>   | best, <i>optimus</i>  | cape, <i>prōmunturium</i>                                 |
|  | betake oneself, <i>sē<br/>recipere</i>                        | capital, <i>caput</i>                                     |
|  |   | captive, <i>captivus</i>                                  |

|                                      |                                |   |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| capture, <i>captare</i>              | cost, to, <i>constare</i>      | dog, <i>catulus</i>                             |
| carry off, <i>deportare</i>          | cottage, <i>casa</i>           | drive, <i>pellere</i>                           |
| cause, <i>causa</i>                  | country (—native land)         | drive off, <i>prōpulsare</i>                    |
| cavalry, <i>equester</i> (adj.)      | <i>patria</i>                  | during, <i>inter</i> or <i>per</i>              |
| Celts, <i>Celtae</i>                 | country house, <i>villa</i>    | Dutch, <i>Batāvus</i>                           |
| century, <i>saeculum</i>             | courage, <i>audācia</i>        | dwell, <i>habitare</i>                          |
| channel, <i>fretum</i>               | course, <i>cursus</i>          |   |
| chapter, <i>caput</i>                | coward, <i>ignāvus</i>         | earth, <i>terra</i>                             |
| charge, to, <i>prōcurrere</i>        | cowardly, <i>ignāvus</i>       | east, <i>oriens</i>                             |
| chariot, <i>essēdūm</i>              | create, <i>creāre</i>          | eastern, <i>orientālis</i>                      |
| cheerful, <i>hilarus</i>             | cross, to, <i>trāicere</i>     | easy, <i>facilis</i>                            |
| chief, <i>summus</i>                 | cruel, <i>crūdēlis</i>         | egg, <i>ōvum</i>                                |
| children, <i>liberi</i>              | cube, <i>tessella</i> , I      | eight, <i>octō</i>                              |
| Christ, <i>Christus</i>              | danger, <i>perīculum</i>       | eight hundredth, <i>octin-</i>                  |
| Christian, <i>Christiānus</i>        | dangerous, <i>perīculōsus</i>  | <i>gentēsimus</i>                               |
| church, <i>basilica</i>              | daughter, <i>filia</i>         | eighth, <i>octāvus</i>                          |
| Cicero, <i>Cicerō</i> (-ōn-)         | day, <i>diēs</i>               | eighty, <i>octōgintā</i>                        |
| citizen, <i>cīvis</i>                | dear, <i>cārus</i>             | eleventh, <i>undēcimūs</i>                      |
| citizenship, <i>cīvitās</i>          | death, <i>mors</i>             | else, <i>alius</i> , <i>alīa</i> , <i>aliud</i> |
| city, <i>urbs</i>                    | December, <i>December</i>      | embroidered, <i>pictus</i> , a-                 |
| civil war, <i>bellum do-</i>         | declare, <i>dēclarāre</i> or   | um  |
| <i>mesticum</i>                      | <i>affirmāre</i> ; declare     | emperor, <i>prīnceps</i>                        |
| civilized, <i>hūmānus</i>            | war, <i>bellum indicere</i>    | empire, <i>imperīum</i>                         |
| climb up, <i>ascendere</i>           | defeat, <i>superāre</i> or     | end, <i>finis</i>                               |
| cloak, <i>chlāmys</i> ( <i>chla-</i> | <i>vincere</i> (after § 38)    | endure, <i>tolerāre</i>                         |
| <i>myd-</i> ), 3                     | defend, <i>dēfendere</i>       | enemy, <i>hostis</i>                            |
| cloud of dust, <i>pulvis</i>         | defender, <i>dēfensor</i>      | enrol, <i>conscrībere</i>                       |
| coast, <i>lītus</i>                  | delight, <i>dēlectāmentum</i>  | enter, <i>intrāre</i>                           |
| cohort, <i>cohōrs</i>                | delight, to, <i>dēlectāre</i>  | entrust, <i>mandāre</i>                         |
| coin, <i>nummus</i>                  | desire, to, <i>cupere</i>      | even, <i>etiam</i>                              |
| Colchester, <i>Camulo-</i>           | desirous, <i>cupidus</i>       | ever, <i>umquām</i> ; —al-                      |
| <i>dūnum</i>                         | destroy, <i>dēlēre</i>         | ways, <i>semper</i>                             |
| collect, <i>colligō</i>              | devastate, <i>vastāre</i>      | every day, <i>cotīdiē</i>                       |
| colonel, <i>praefectus</i>           | die, <i>exspirāre</i>          | exclaim, <i>exclāmāre</i>                       |
| colony, <i>colōnia</i>               | difficult, <i>difficilis</i>   | expectation, <i>exspectātiō</i>                 |
| come, <i>venīre</i>                  | dig, <i>fodere</i>             | expedition, <i>expeditiō</i>                    |
| command, <i>imperīum</i>             | dig up, <i>excavāre</i>        | eye, <i>oculus</i>                              |
| command, to be in,                   | dining room, <i>tricli-</i>    |   |
| <i>prae-esse</i> (of, Dat.)          | <i>nium</i> , 2                | face, <i>faciēs</i>                             |
| commander, <i>imperātor</i>          | disaster, <i>clādēs</i>        | faithful, <i>fidus</i>                          |
| commander in chief,                  | distant, <i>remōtus</i> ; to   | famous, <i>celeber</i>                          |
| <i>imperātor</i> <i>summus</i>       | be —, <i>distāre</i>           | far, <i>procūl</i>                              |
| commerce, <i>mercātūra</i> , I       | distinguished, <i>insignis</i> | farewell, <i>valē</i>                           |
| compel, <i>cōgere</i>                | or <i>clārus</i>               | farm, <i>agellus</i>                            |
| conquer, <i>vincere</i>              | ditch, dyke, <i>fossa</i>      | fashion, <i>modus</i>                           |
| conquered, <i>dēbellātus</i>         | divide, <i>dīvidere</i>        | fate, <i>fortūna</i>                            |
| conqueror, <i>victor</i>             | do, <i>facere</i>              | father, <i>pater</i>                            |
| conversation, <i>sermō</i>           |                                | fatherland, <i>patria</i>                       |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| fear, <i>to</i> , <i>formidāre</i>                     | Gaul, <i>Gallia</i>                                      | hurry, <i>festīnāre</i>                      |
| few, a few, <i>pauci</i>                               | general, <i>dux</i>                                      | if, <i>sī</i>                                |
| fifth, <i>quintus</i>                                  | German, <i>Germānus</i>                                  | image, <i>simulācrum</i>                     |
| fifty, <i>quinquāgintā</i>                             | Germanic, <i>Germānicus</i>                              | immense, <i>ingens</i>                       |
| fifty-fifth, <i>quintus et quinquāgēsimus</i>          | Germany, <i>Germānia</i>                                 | implore, <i>implōrāre</i>                    |
| fight, <i>to</i> , <i>fugnāre</i>                      | give, <i>dare</i>  | in, <i>in</i> , with Abl.                    |
| fine, <i>pulcher</i>                                   | glass vessels, <i>vitrea</i> , 2                         | in order that, <i>ut</i>                     |
| fire, <i>ignis</i> , <i>m.</i>                         | glorious, <i>clārus</i>                                  | in the house of, <i>apud</i>                 |
| first, <i>primus</i>                                   | glory, <i>glōria</i>                                     | infantry, <i>pedester</i> (adj.)             |
| five, <i>quinque</i>                                   | god, <i>deus</i>   | inhabit, <i>incolere</i>                     |
| flag, <i>vexillūm</i>                                  | good, <i>bonus</i>                                       | inhabitant, <i>incola</i>                    |
| fleet, <i>classis</i>                                  | gradually, <i>paulātim</i>                               | inhuman, <i>inhūmānus</i>                    |
| folly, <i>stultitia</i>                                | great, <i>magnus</i>                                     | injury, <i>iniūria</i>                       |
| food, <i>cibus</i>                                     | greater, <i>māior</i> , <i>māius</i>                     | into, <i>in</i> , with Acc.                  |
| foot, <i>pēs</i> , <i>m.</i>                           | greatly, <i>magnopere</i>                                | Irish, <i>Hibernicus</i>                     |
| football, <i>follis</i> , <i>m.</i>                    | grief, <i>dolor</i>                                      | island, <i>insula</i>                        |
| for, <i>nam</i> or <i>enim</i>                         | guard, <i>custōdīre</i>                                  | Isle of Thanet, <i>Insula Tanatis</i>        |
| for the sake, <i>causā</i>                             | gun, <i>tormentum</i>                                    | Isle of Wight, <i>Insula Vectis</i>          |
| forbid, <i>prohibēre</i>                               | hair, <i>capillī</i> , pl.                               | January, <i>Iānuārius</i>                    |
| forces, <i>cōpiae</i>                                  | hall, <i>ātrium</i>                                      | jolly, <i>bellus</i>                         |
| foreigner, <i>peregrīnus</i>                           | hand, <i>manus</i>                                       | just, <i>iustus</i>                          |
| forename, <i>praeñomen</i>                             | happy, <i>fēlix</i> ( <i>fēlic-</i> ), 3                 | Jutland, <i>paeninsula Cimbrica</i>          |
| form, <i>forma</i>                                     | harbour, <i>portus</i>                                   | keen, <i>ācer</i>                            |
| fortieth, <i>quadrāgēsimus</i>                         | hasten, <i>properāre</i>                                 | keeper, <i>custōs</i>                        |
| fortify, <i>mūnire</i>                                 | have, <i>habēre</i>                                      | Kent, <i>Cantium</i>                         |
| forty, <i>quadrāgintā</i>                              | hear, <i>audire</i>                                      | kill, <i>interficere</i> (after § 43)        |
| forum, <i>forum</i>                                    | help, <i>auxilium</i> , 2                                | Kimberley, <i>Adamantopolis</i>              |
| found, <i>condere</i>                                  | high, <i>altus</i>                                       | kind, <i>benignus</i>                        |
| foundation, <i>fundāmen-tum</i>                        | hill, <i>collis</i> , <i>m.</i>                          | king, <i>rex</i>                             |
| four, <i>quattuor</i>                                  | himself (Accus.), <i>sē</i>                              | kingdom, <i>regnum</i>                       |
| fourteenth, <i>quartus deci-mus</i>                    | history, <i>historia</i>                                 | kitchen, <i>culina</i> , 1                   |
| fourth, <i>quartus</i>                                 | hold, <i>tenēre</i> or <i>habēre</i> ( <i>sermōnem</i> ) | know, <i>scire</i>                           |
| fowl, <i>gallina</i>                                   | holidays, <i>feriae</i>                                  | knowledge, <i>nōtītia</i>                    |
| France, <i>Francogallia</i>                            | home, <i>domus</i> ; —home-wards, <i>domum</i>           | known, <i>nōtus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> . |
| free, <i>liber</i>                                     | hope, <i>spēs</i>  | Ladysmith, <i>Castra Ma-riāna</i>            |
| free, <i>to</i> , <i>liberāre</i>                      | hope, <i>to</i> , <i>spērāre</i>                         | land, <i>terra</i> ; lands, <i>agri</i>      |
| freedom, <i>libertās</i>                               | horse-flesh, <i>carō equīna</i>                          | land, <i>to</i> , <i>applicāre</i>           |
| French, the, <i>Franco-gallī</i>                       | hour, <i>hōra</i>  | large, <i>magnus</i>                         |
| friend, <i>amicus</i>                                  | how, <i>quam</i> or <i>ut</i>                            |  |
| from, <i>ā</i> ( <i>ab</i> ) or <i>ē</i> ( <i>ex</i> ) | how many, <i>quot</i>                                    |  |
| full, <i>plēnus</i>                                    | how much, <i>quantopere</i>                              |  |
| Gallic, <i>Gallicus</i>                                | however, <i>autem</i> , <i>tamen</i>                     |  |
| gas, <i>āer</i>  | hundred, <i>centum</i> ; for 200 see 'two.'              |  |
|  | hurrah, <i>optimē</i>                                    |  |

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| laugh, <i>ridēre</i>  | miserable, <i>miser</i>   | nothing, <i>nihil</i>                                    |
| lazy, <i>piger, pigr-a, -um</i>   | missile, <i>missile</i>   | now, <i>nunc</i>   |
| lead, <i>dūcere</i>   | missionary, <i>nuntius</i>  | nowadays, <i>hodiē</i>                                   |
| left, <i>laevus</i>   | <i>verbi dīvīni</i>   | nowhere, <i>nusquam</i>                                  |
| legion, <i>legiō</i>  | mistaken, to be, <i>errāre</i>  | number, <i>numerus</i>                                   |
| less, <i>minus</i>  | mistress, <i>domina</i>   |  |
| lessons, <i>scholae</i>   | Modder River, <i>Flūmen</i>   |  |
| let out, <i>ēmittere</i>  | <i>Turbulentum</i>  |  |
| letter, <i>epistola</i> or <i>litterae</i> ; (of the alpha-<br>bet), <i>littera</i> | month, <i>mensis</i>  |  |
| liberty, <i>libertās</i>  | moon, <i>lūna</i>   |  |
| lie, <i>iacēre</i>  | morning, in the, <i>mānū</i>  |  |
| life, <i>vīta</i>   | most bravely, <i>fortis-<br/>simē</i>   |  |
| light, <i>lux</i>   | mostly, <i>plērumque</i>  |  |
| like to,—, <i>libenter</i> , with<br>Verb   | mother, <i>māter</i>  |  |
| listen, <i>auscultāre</i>   | mountain, <i>mons, m.</i>   |  |
| little, <i>parvus</i>   | move, <i>moveō</i>  |  |
| live (—dwell), <i>habitāre</i>  | much, <i>multūm</i>   |  |
| live on (—eat), <i>victi-<br/>tāre</i> , with Abl.                                  | multitude, <i>multitūdō</i>   |  |
| London, <i>Londinium</i>  | murder, <i>trucidāre</i>  |  |
| long (adj.), <i>longus</i> ;<br>(adv.), <i>diū</i>                                  | naked, <i>nūdus</i>   |  |
| look, <i>spectāre</i>   | name, <i>nōmen</i>  |  |
| lose, <i>āmittere</i>   | name, to, <i>nōmināre</i>   |  |
| love, <i>amāre</i>  | Natal, <i>Terra Nātālis</i>   |  |
| lunch, <i>prandium</i>  | near, <i>prope</i> or <i>ad</i>   |  |
| Mafeking, <i>Statiō Be-<br/>chuānārum</i>   | necessary, <i>necessē</i>   |  |
| make, <i>facere</i>   | net, <i>indāgō</i>  |  |
| man, <i>vir</i> ; —human<br>being, <i>homō</i>                                      | never, <i>numquam</i>   |  |
| manufacture, <i>fabricāre</i>   | nevertheless, <i>tamen</i>  |  |
| many, <i>multi, ae, a</i>   | new, <i>novus</i>   |  |
| march, <i>iter facere</i>   | news, <i>nuntius</i>  |  |
| meanwhile, <i>intereā</i>   | newspapers, <i>acta diurna</i>  |  |
| mention, <i>commemorāre</i>   | next, <i>proximus</i>   |  |
| merciful, <i>clēmens</i>  | night, <i>nox</i> ; by night,<br><i>noctū</i>   |  |
| merry, <i>hilarus</i>   | nine hundred, <i>nōngentī</i>   |  |
| message, <i>nuntius</i>   | ninth, <i>nōnūs</i>   |  |
| midland, <i>mediterrāneus</i>   | no (—not any), <i>nullus</i>  |  |
| mile, <i>mille passūs</i> ;<br>miles, <i>mīlia passuum</i>                          | Nones, <i>Nōnae</i>   |  |
| mind, <i>animus</i>   | north, <i>septentriōnēs</i>   |  |
| minister, <i>minister</i>   | northern, <i>septentriōnā-<br/>lis</i>  |  |
|   | not, <i>nōn</i> ; not only,<br><i>nōn sōlūm</i> ; not any<br>longer, <i>nōn iam</i> ; |  |
|   | not yet, <i>nōndūm</i>  |  |
|   | note book, <i>commentārii</i>   |  |
|   |   | page, <i>pāgina</i> , 1                                  |
|   |   | panic, <i>terror</i>                                     |
|   |   | part, <i>pars</i>  |
|   |   | pavement, <i>pavimentum</i>                              |
|   |   | pay attention, <i>operam<br/>dare</i>                    |
|   |   | peace, <i>pax</i>  |
|   |   | people, <i>a, populus</i> ;<br>— persons, <i>hominēs</i> |
|   |   | perhaps, <i>fortasse</i>                                 |
|   |   | Picts, <i>Pictū</i>                                      |
|   |   | picture, <i>tabula</i> , 1                               |
|   |   | pit, <i>puteus</i>                                       |
|   |   | pity, <i>misericordia</i>                                |
|   |   | place, <i>locus</i>                                      |
|   |   | place, to, <i>collocāre</i>                              |
|   |   | plan, <i>consilium</i>                                   |
|   |   | pluck, <i>virtūs</i>                                     |
|   |   | poet, <i>poēta</i>                                       |

|  |  |                                       |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| port, <i>portus</i>                            | say, <i>dicere</i> ; or <i>inquam</i> ,    | dāre; slaughtered,                    |
| praetor, <i>praetor</i>                        | <i>inquis</i> , <i>inquit</i> , <i>in-</i> | <i>trucidātus</i>                     |
| praise, <i>laudāre</i>                         | <i>quimus</i> , <i>inquiunt</i>            | slave, <i>servus</i>                  |
| prefect, <i>praefectus</i>                     | school, <i>lūdus litterārius</i>           | slavery, <i>servitūs</i>              |
| prepare, <i>parāre</i>                         | schoolmaster, <i>magister</i>              | sleep, <i>somnus</i>                  |
| prevent, <i>prohibēre</i>                      | schoolmistress, <i>magis-</i>              | smaller, <i>minor</i> , <i>minus</i>  |
| provide, <i>praebēre</i>                       | <i>tra</i>                                 | so, <i>tam</i>                        |
| province, <i>prōvincia</i>                     | Scots, <i>Scōtī</i>                        | so great, <i>tantus</i>               |
| purpose, <i>consilium</i>                      | Scottish, <i>Scōticus</i>                  | soil, <i>solum</i>                    |
| put to death, <i>morti-</i>                    | sea, <i>mare</i>                           | soldier, <i>miles</i>                 |
| <i>dare</i>                                    | second, <i>secundus</i>                    | some, <i>nōnnūli</i> (of, <i>ex</i> ) |
| queen, <i>rēgina</i>                           | see, see to it, <i>vidēre</i> ;            | someday, <i>aliquāndō</i>             |
| rank, <i>ordō</i>                              | sell, <i>vēnumdare</i>                     | sometimes, <i>interdūm</i> or         |
| read, <i>lectitāre</i> or <i>legō</i>          | send, <i>mittere</i>                       | <i>nōnnūmquām</i>                     |
| (after § 34)                                   | send out, <i>ēmittere</i>                  | son, <i>filius</i>                    |
| ready, <i>parātus</i>                          | September, <i>September</i>                | song, <i>cantus</i>                   |
| real, <i>vērus</i>                             | serve (as a soldier),                      | soon, <i>mox</i>                      |
| rebellion, <i>rebelliō</i>                     | <i>militāre</i>                            | sorry: see 'vex'                      |
| recall, <i>revocāre</i>                        | set up, <i>collocāre</i>                   | southern, <i>meridiānus</i>           |
| receive, <i>accipere</i>                       | seventh, <i>septimus</i>                   | Spaniard, <i>Hispanus</i>             |
| red, <i>ruber</i> , <i>rubr-a</i> , <i>-um</i> | seventieth, <i>septuāgēsi-</i>             | speak, <i>dicere</i>                  |
| reign, <i>regnum</i>                           | <i>mus</i>                                 | spear, <i>hasta</i> , 1               |
| reign, to, <i>regnāre</i>                      | seventy-eighth, <i>duodē-</i>              | special, <i>praecipius</i>            |
| rejoice, <i>gaudēre</i>                        | <i>octōgēsimus</i>                         | square (adj.), <i>quadrātus</i>       |
| remain, <i>manēre</i>                          | shape, <i>forma</i> , 1                    | stand, <i>stāre</i>                   |
| remains, <i>reliquiae</i>                      | shell, <i>concha</i> , 1                   | standard, <i>signum</i>               |
| remote, <i>remōtus</i>                         | shilling, <i>dēnārius</i>                  | station, <i>statiō</i>                |
| republic, <i>rēspūblica</i>                    | ship, <i>nāvis</i>                         | stature, <i>statūra</i> , 1           |
| resolve, <i>constituere</i>                    | show, <i>monstrāre</i> or                  | storm, to, <i>expugnāre</i>           |
| reverse, <i>incommōdum</i>                     | <i>praestāre</i>                           | strange, <i>mīrus</i>                 |
| Rhine, <i>Rhēnus</i>                           | side, <i>latus</i> ( <i>later-</i> ), 3    | strengthen, <i>firmāre</i>            |
| ride, <i>equitāre</i>                          | siege, <i>obsidīō</i>                      | stretch, <i>pertinēre</i>             |
| right, <i>dexter</i>                           | signal, <i>signum</i>                      | studies, <i>studia</i>                |
| Roman, <i>Rōmānus</i>                          | signify, <i>significāre</i>                | subdue, <i>dēbellāre</i>              |
| Rome, <i>Rōma</i>                              | Silchester, <i>Callēva</i>                 | successfully, <i>prospērē</i>         |
| round, <i>circum</i>                           | silence, <i>silentium</i>                  | suddenly, <i>subitō</i>               |
|  | sing, <i>cantāre</i>                       | surname, <i>cognōmen</i>              |
| said (he, she), <i>inquit</i>                  | sit down, <i>sedēre</i>                    | surrender, <i>dēdere</i>              |
| said (they), <i>inquiunt</i>                   | situated, <i>situs</i> ; to be             | surround, <i>circumdare</i>           |
| sail, <i>nāvigāre</i>                          | —, <i>iacēre</i>                           | swim, <i>natāre</i>                   |
| Saint, <i>Sanctus</i>                          | six, <i>sex</i>                            |                                       |
| sake (for the), <i>causā</i>                   | six hundred, <i>sescentī</i>               | take, <i>capere</i>                   |
| savage, <i>saevus</i>                          | sixteenth, <i>sextus deci-</i>             | take by storm, <i>expug-</i>          |
| save, <i>servāre</i> or <i>salvum</i>          | <i>mus</i>                                 | <i>nāre</i>                           |
| <i>praestāre</i>                               | sixth, <i>sextus</i>                       | take oneself back, <i>sē</i>          |
| Saxons, <i>Saxonēs</i>                         | sixtieth, <i>sexāgēsimus</i>               | <i>recipere</i>                       |
|  | slaughter, <i>trucidātiō</i>               | teach, <i>docēre</i>                  |
|  | slaughter, to, <i>truci-</i>               |                                       |

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| tell, <i>narrāre</i> , or <i>dīcere</i><br>(after § 32) | tumble, <i>cadere</i>                      | what (in a question),<br><i>quid</i> , Plur. <i>quae</i> ;  |
| temple, <i>tempłum</i>                                  | tunic, <i>tunica</i> , I                   | (not in a question),<br><i>quod</i>   |
| ten, <i>decem</i>                                       | turbulent, <i>turbulentus</i>              | what o'clock, <i>quota</i>  |
| tennis, <i>lūdus trigōnālis</i>                         | twelfth, <i>duodecimus</i>                 | <i>hōra</i>   |
| tenth, <i>decimus</i>                                   | twelve, <i>duodecim</i>                    | when (in a question),<br><i>quāndō</i> ; (not in a  |
| tesselated, <i>tessellātus</i>                          | twentieth, <i>vīcesimus</i>                | question), <i>cum</i>   |
| than, <i>quam</i>                                       | twenty, <i>vīgintī</i>                     | whence, <i>unde</i>   |
| that, <i>quod</i> (but gener-<br>ally Acc. with Inf.)   | two, <i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i> | where, <i>ubi</i>   |
| then, <i>tum</i>  | uncle, <i>patruus</i>                      | which, <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i>   |
| there, <i>ibi</i>                                       | under, <i>sub</i>                          | while, <i>dum</i>   |
| thing, <i>rēs</i>                                       | unhappy, <i>miser</i>                      | white, <i>albus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i>  |
| think, <i>cōgitāre</i>                                  | unite, <i>conclādere</i>                   | who (in a question),<br><i>quis</i> ; (not in a ques-<br>tion), <i>qui</i> or <i>quae</i>           |
| third, <i>tertius</i>                                   | unless, <i>nisi</i>                        | whole, <i>tōtus</i>   |
| thirtieth, <i>trīcēsimus</i>                            | until, <i>dōnec</i>                        | why, <i>cūr</i>   |
| thirty, <i>trīgintā</i>                                 | upon, <i>in</i>                            | wife, <i>uxor</i>   |
| this, <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hōc</i>             | urn, <i>urna</i> , I                       | win a victory over,<br><i>victoriām reportāre</i>   |
| thousand (a), <i>mille</i> :                            | use, <i>ūsus</i>                           | <i>ā</i> (or <i>ab</i> )  |
| thousands, <i>mīlia</i>                                 | veldt, <i>campī lātī</i>                   | window, <i>fenestra</i>   |
| thousandth, <i>millēsimus</i>                           | verse, <i>versus</i>                       | wing (of a building<br>or army), <i>cornū</i>   |
| three, <i>trēs</i> , m., f.; <i>tria</i> , n.           | very-good, <i>optimus</i>                  | with, <i>cum</i> (put after<br><i>mē</i> , <i>tē</i> , <i>sē</i> , <i>nōbis</i> ,<br><i>vōbis</i> ) |
| through, <i>per</i>                                     | very-great, <i>maximus</i>                 | within, <i>intrā</i>  |
| throw, <i>iacere</i>                                    | vessel, <i>nāvigium</i>                    | without, <i>sine</i>  |
| thunder, <i>tonitrus</i>                                | vestibule, <i>vestibulum</i>               | wolf, <i>lūpus</i>  |
| thus, <i>sic</i>  | veteran, <i>veterānus</i>                  | woman, <i>fēmina</i>  |
| time, <i>tempus</i>                                     | vexes (it), <i>pīget</i>                   | worship, <i>adōrāre</i>   |
| to, <i>ad</i>   | victor, <i>victor</i>                      | wound, <i>vulnerāre</i>   |
| to-day, <i>hodie</i>                                    | victory, <i>victōria</i>                   | write, <i>scribēre</i>  |
| together, <i>ūndā</i>                                   | voice, <i>vox</i>                          | write out, <i>exscribēre</i>  |
| toil, <i>labor</i>                                      | Wales, <i>Cambria</i>                      | writer, <i>scriptor</i>   |
| tolerate, <i>tolerāre</i>                               | walk, <i>ambulāre</i>                      | year, <i>annus</i>  |
| to-morrow, <i>crās</i>                                  | wall, <i>mūrus</i>                         | yellow, <i>flāvus</i>   |
| too, <i>nīmis</i> ; — also,<br><i>quoque</i>            | want, <i>inopīa</i>                        | yesterday, <i>herī</i>  |
| tower, <i>turrīs</i>                                    | war, <i>bellum</i>                         | yet (after 'not'), - <i>dum</i>   |
| town, <i>oppidum</i>                                    | warlike, <i>ferōx</i> ( <i>ferōc-</i> ), 3 |   |
| transport, <i>transportāre</i>                          | water, <i>aqua</i>                         |   |
| tremble, <i>tremere</i>                                 | wave, <i>unda</i>                          |   |
| trench, <i>fossa</i>                                    | well, <i>puteus</i>                        |   |
| tribe, <i>nātiō</i> or <i>gens</i>                      | well (Adv.), <i>bene</i>                   |   |
| true, <i>vērus</i>                                      | west, <i>occidens</i>                      |   |
| try, <i>operam dare</i>                                 | western, <i>occidentālis</i>               |   |

## Summary of Grammatical Rules

(In Alphabetical Order)

### Agreement.

1. A verb agrees with its subject in Person and Number :—  
*animo alaci lectito.* § 1. 11.  
*tunc, Alexander, Pictus es?* § 21. 2.  
*vita Agricolae me delectat.* § 1. 10.

2. An adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number and Case :—

*reges Britannici vel reginae Britannicae in Britannia regnaverunt.* § 3. 2.

This rule applies not only to examples like the above, in which the adjective is called an *Attribute* of the noun, but also to examples like the following, in which the adjective is said to be *predicated* of the noun :—

*vita Agricolae difficilis est et obscura.* § 1. 10.

*Horatius incolas Britanniae feros nominat.* § 4. 6.

3. A noun standing in apposition to another noun agrees with it in Case :—

*librum de vita Agricolae, ducis celebris, mihi dedit.* § 1. 7.  
*ad flumen Tamesam penetraverat.* § 2. 5.

*ex insula Mona properavit.* § 9. 4.

4. The relative pronoun *qui*, *quae*, *quod* stands in the Case in which it would stand if the subordinate clause were a separate sentence, and it agrees in Gender and Number with the noun or pronoun to which it refers :—

*necesse fuit Hadriano, qui princeps Romanorum fuit,*  
*magnum vallum aedificare, cuius reliquiae hodie spec-*  
*tantur.* § 20. 7.

### Cases without Prepositions.

Note the following uses of the Accusative without a preposition :—

- (1) As the Object of a verb or infinitive :—

*vita Agricolae me delectat.* § 1. 9.

*nos non pigebit hic sedere.* § 22. 8. } Impersonal verbs.  
*Angelos eos vocari oportet.* § 28. 18. }

*necesse fuit Hadriano magnum vallum aedificare.* § 20. 8.

(2) as the Subject of an infinitive :—

*Tacitus eum victoriam reportavisse affirmat.* § 2. 10.  
*se in loco iniquo esse viderunt.* § 39. 19.

(3) denoting ‘time how long’ :—

*apud magistrum meum iam septem dies sum.* § 31. 2.  
*ab hinc annos duos* (‘two years ago,’ § 25. 5).

(4) denoting ‘how far’ in space :—

*ducenta milia passum distat.* § 42. 8.

(5) denoting ‘how much’ :—

*vita Agricolae multum me delectat.* § 1. 7.

(6) denoting ‘place whither’ in names of Towns (— ‘to’) :—

*Caractacum Romam deportaverunt.* § 5. 26.  
*cur non Rutupias hodie ambulatis?* § 18. 3.

Note the following uses of the Ablative without a preposition :—

(1) denoting separation (— ‘from’) with certain verbs and adjectives :—

*scholis liberi sumus.* § 55. 18.

(2) denoting instrument, means or manner (— ‘with’ or ‘by’) :—

*Britannos velut in dagine circumdederant.* § 13. 16.  
*longo die fatigati eramus.* § 29. 6.  
*animo alacri lectito.* § 1. 11.

(3) denoting the measure of difference (— ‘by’) :—

*multo plures sunt.* § 35. 6.

(4) denoting ‘time when’ (— ‘at’ or ‘in’ or ‘on’) :—

*eo tempore rex Britannorum erat.* § 3. 15.

*anno tertio et quadragesimo regnabat.* § 5. 5.  
*haec nonis Novembribus scripsi.* § 39. 22.

(5) denoting price (— ‘at’) :—

*gallinae denariis viginti constant.* § 50. 19.

(6) denoting quality (— ‘of’ or ‘with’) :—

*Britanni viri animo forti erant.* § 2. 14.

*pueros facie pulchra, oculis caeruleis vidit.* § 28. 5.

~~In~~ In this last use alone (No. 6) the Ablative is *adjectival* ;  
 in all other uses it is *adverbial*.

The **Dative** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes 'to' or 'for':—

*filio suo nomen Britannico dedit.* § 5. 13.

*toti insulae nomen est Britanniae.* § 21. 7.

*libertas eis cara erat.* § 4. 11.

*quid utilius erat toti orbi terrarum?* § 15. 6.

*Batavis licet esse civibus Britannicis.* § 56. 61.

*unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem.* § 49. 10.

*novis rebus student.* § 35. 17.

But in the following uses one of the Datives may be translated without 'to' or 'for':—

*ei Britannia non erat curae.* § 2. 20.

*cui erat usui?* ('of use' or 'useful,' § 23. 17.)

*tormenta navalia nostris auxilio fuerunt.* § 39. 11.

So too the Dative with certain verbs:—

*imperio Romano praeerant.* § 3. 19.

*reipublicae nostrae prosit.* § 48. 18.

*tributum Britannis imperaverat.* § 2. 8.

The **Genitive** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes 'of':—

*vita Agricolae* (§ 1. 9). *Annales Taciti* (§ 1. 15). *rex Britannorum* (§ 3. 5).

*nomen regis* ('the name of the king,' § 3. 11).

*Britanni huius faciei sunt.* § 28. 11.

But in the following uses the Genitive may be translated without 'of':—

*num quid novi vidisti?* ('anything new,' § 31. 7.)

*ne quid detrimenti capiat* ('any harm,' § 52. 9).

*nomen Germanorum* ('the name Germans,' § 34. 19).

The **Locative** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes 'at':—

*Devae, Iscae, Viroconii* (§ 5. 22), *Dubris* (§ 27. 5).

*domi* (§ 29. 6).

**☞** In Singulars of the 1st and 2nd declensions the Locative is the same in form as the Genitive; in Singulars of the 3rd declension and all plurals it is the same in form as the Ablative.

## Gender of Nouns.

1. Nouns denoting PERSONS are masculine if they denote male persons, feminine if they denote female persons. This rule is the same for all declensions :—

e.g. *amita, Boadicea*, fem. ; *nauta, agricola, Caligula*, masc.  
*mater, uxor*, fem. ; *pater, frater, victor*, masc.  
*princeps, rex, custos, miles, Cicero*, masc.

2. The gender of nouns NOT DENOTING PERSONS may be mostly found by the following rules :—

- (a) Those of the 1st declension are all feminine, e.g. *vita*.
- (b) Those of the 2nd declension in us or r are nearly all masculine, e.g. *campus, liber* (except names of trees, which are feminine, e.g. *ulmus*) ; those of the 2nd declension in um are all neuter, e.g. *CAELUM*.
- (c) Those of the 3rd declension which form the nominative singular by adding an s are mostly feminine, e.g. *hiem-s, pax (= pac-s), aeta-s (= aetat-s), virtū-s (= virtut-s); navi-s, clade-s* : except masc. *pes, sanguis, mons, pons; collis, fines* (plur.), *ignis, orbis, mensis*, and a few others.  
 Those of the 3rd declension which form the nominative singular without adding an s are mostly—  
 feminine if the nom. sing. ends in *io, do* or *go*,  
 e.g. *regio, grando* (except *ordo*, m.), *origo, indago*, especially those in *-tio, -tudo*,  
 e.g. *mutatio, natio; multitudo, testudo* :  
 neuter if the nom. sing. ends in *MEN, ŪS,\* UR, or E*,  
 e.g. *NOMEN, GENUS, ROBUR, MARE* :  
 masculine in other cases,  
 e.g. *amor, calor; agger, aer, lumen; sol; sermo; pulvis,\* mos.\**
- (d) Those of the 4th declension in us are nearly all masculine, e.g. *exercitus* (except *domus, Idus, manus*, fem.) ; those of the 4th declension in u are all neuter, e.g. *CORNU*.
- (e) Those of the 5th declension are all feminine, e.g. *facies* (except *dies*, which is generally masculine, though sometimes feminine in the sense 'time' : singular number).

\* The final s in these cases is not an *addition* to the stem, but part of it: the stem ends in s, but this s is turned into r in the genitive and other cases. Note *-ūs* neuter, *-ūs* feminine (e.g. *virtūs*).

**Gerund and Gerundive.**

The Gerund is a noun, corresponding to an English noun in -ing (formed from a verb) :—

unus homo nobis *cunctando* restituit rem. § 49. 10 ;  
and it takes the same case (or no case) as the verb from which it is formed :—

*regem spectandi* cupidi erant. § 6. 4.

*toti orbi terrarum imperitandi* cupidi estis. § 6. 14.

The Gerundive is an adjective (formed from a verb), which, agreeing with a noun or pronoun, gives the same sense as the Gerund with the Accusative :—

*proelii spectandi* ( — *proelium spectandi*) causa. § 9. 16.

*coloniae defendendae* ( — *coloniā defendendi*) causa. § 36. 7.

de *ea intranda* cogitavit. § 2. 22.

**Moods.**

The Indicative mood expresses fact :—

*Kalendae sunt hodie Septembres.* § 1. 1.

*multa de bello audimus.* § 40. 2.

The Imperative mood expresses command or prayer :—

*audite, pueri !* § 40. 7.

*unum foedus omnis esto nominis Britannici !* § 49. 15.

The Subjunctive (or Injunctive) mood expresses desire, and may generally be translated by 'may' or 'shall' (or by 'might' or 'should' in the past imperfect tense) :—

*Deo sit gratia !* § 51. 20.

*Deus salvam praestet reginam !* § 49. 29.

*ne desperemus !* § 49. 7.

The Subjunctive mood often stands in subordinate clauses :—

(a) introduced by *ut*, 'that' :—

*operam dant ut oppidum expugnent.* § 50. 4.

*ita facta est ut ad terram applicetur.* § 50. 25.

*tantus imber cadit ut sol obscuretur* ('is darkened').  
§ 50. 11.

*operam dabat ut castra obsidione liberaret.* § 54. 3.

(b) introduced by *ne*, 'that . . . not' or 'lest' :—

*videat ne quid detrimenti respublica capiat !* § 52. 9.

*hostem circumdedit ne evadere posset.* § 53. 8.

(c) introduced by *qui*, *quae*, *quod* :—

*Caledones emititt qui impetum in Batavos dent.* § 51. 5.

*diem constituunt quo impetum dent.* § 50. 5.

*fossas foderat in quibus sui tunici essent.* § 53. 7.

**Order of Words within the sentence or clause.**

RULE 1.—Anything that goes with a Noun (excepting a preposition) is generally put AFTER that Noun in Latin :—

Kalendae *Septembres*—animo *alacri*—patruus *meus*—Britannia *nosta antiqua*—veterani *illi Romani*—vita *Agri-colae*. (This is the usual place of the Genitive.)

Except Demonstrative, Interrogative and Numeral Adjectives (including those Adjectives of Quantity which mean 'all,' 'some,' 'many,' 'few,' 'great,' 'small') :—

*id bellum*—*hic vir*—*illa femina*—*aliud tempus*—*tantus imber*—*quanta mutatio*—*quo tempore*—*duae horae*—*primus mensis*—*omnes homines*—*nonnulli homines*—*multi homines*—*pauci anni*—*magna multitudo*—*parva manus*.

RULE 2.—Anything that goes with a Verb or an Adjective or an Adverb is generally put BEFORE that Verb, Adjective or Adverb in Latin :—

*mane lectito*—*in mari natamus*—*me delectat*—*non possum* :  
*nonnullis in locis difficilis*—*victoria a Britannis reportata*:  
*multo ante* (§ 41. 1)—*non revera*—*non saepe*.

The Dative generally stands before the Accusative :—

*ludo trigonali operam damus.*

*libris duas horas cotidie do.*

☞ As a general rule finish off one clause before beginning another.

**Passive Voice.**

For the formation of the Passive Voice from the Active in the Present, Past Imperfect and Future tenses, see page 72 ; for the formation of the Perfect tenses, see page 81.

The person by whom something is done is expressed by *a* or *ab* with the Ablative :—

*ab aliis imperatoribus oppida expugnabantur.* § 16. 9.

Note the passive construction with a vague subject :—

*pugnabitur*—'it will be fought'—'a fight will be fought,'  
§ 41. 16.

**Prepositions.**

Most prepositions take the Accusative in classical prose, but the following six (and a few others not used in this book) always take the Ablative :—

*a Caledonibus, ab hostibus*  
*pro patria*  
*e Britannia, ex Annalibus*

*cum Caractaco, mecum*  
*sine mora*  
*de Britannis, de ira*

[TURN OVER.]

and the following two take either the Ablative or the Accusative, according to the meaning :—

*in* when it means 'in' or 'on' takes the Abl.

when it means 'into' or 'onto' takes the Accus.

*sub* when it means 'under' or 'down in' takes the Abl.

when it means 'towards' or 'down into' takes the Accus.

e.g. *in mari* natare ; *in mare* pellere :

*sub signis Romanis* militare ; *sub vesperum*.

#### Pronouns and Adjectives connected with them.

SUUS, SUA, SUUM ('his own,' 'their own') is an Adjective, and generally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence or clause (printed in black type) :—

*Claudius filio suo* nomen Britannico dedit. § 5. 13.

EIRUS ('his') and EORUM, EARUM ('their') are Genitive cases of the Pronoun *is*, *ea*, *id*, and generally refer to some person or thing mentioned in a previous sentence :—

*Claudius* expeditionem contra Britannos paravit : consilium *eius* erat Britanniā debellare. § 5. 1-4.

SE, SUI, SIBI, SE ('himself,' 'themselves') is a Pronoun, and generally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence or clause :—

*Caledones* trans Clotam et Bodotriam se congregant. § 11. 16.  
templum, ubi veterani se occultaverant, cremant. § 9. 3.

IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM is generally an Adjective like the English -self in 'myself,' 'himself,' 'themselves' :—

cupidi erant regem ipsum spectandi. § 6. 4.

t tormenta in ipso tempore apportaverant. § 39. 10.

#### Questions.

Questions which can be answered by 'yes' or 'no' are introduced by *num* or *-ne* :—

*num* vos viri minus fortis eritis ? § 8. 21.

*tune*, Alexander, Pictus es ? § 21. 1.

*nonne* melius erit in castello cenare ? § 18. 14.

~~as~~ *Nonne* is simply the negative *non* with the *-ne* attached to it ; the *-ne* turns the negative statement into a negative question.

Questions which cannot be answered by 'yes' or 'no' are introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives or adverbs (without any *num* or *-ne*) :—

*quis* hoc castellum delevit ? § 24. 1.

*quo* tempore in Caledoniam migraverunt ? § 19. 15.

*cur* non Rutupias hodie ambulamus ? § 18. 2.

*quando* in viam nos dabimus ? § 18. 20.

## Ora Maritima Series.

# ORA MARITIMA

*A Latin Story for Beginners, with Grammar and Exercises.*

By PROFESSOR E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, D.LITT.

Cloth 8vo, price 2s. (SUBJECT TO DISCOUNT).

Now in use in the Manchester Grammar School and its Preparatory Schools.

---

### RECENT OPINIONS.

"*Ora Maritima* does for Latin what the modern oral methods do for French and German, i.e. it makes the beginner realize that the language is really a vehicle of expression, whereby commonsense notions can be conveyed. From personal experience I can testify how a few weeks are sufficient to gain this all-important idea; and it is worth adding that in a school which I have recently inspected a small boy of eleven employed his leisure time in working through *Ora Maritima* to the end and then came to his master for the sequel, *Pro Patria*. There was no need to tell that boy that Latin is something more than a phalanx of declinable nouns and verbs."—ALFRED HUGHES, M.A., Organizing Professor of Education in the University of Birmingham.

"The books are admirable, and under the guidance of a skilful teacher their use in class is followed by excellent results."—Professor MICHAEL E. SADLER, LL.D., Manchester.

"I have started my own small boys in Letin with *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria*, and am delighted with both books; they indicate a method which is attractive to the child without being superficial."—Sir ARTHUR HORT M.A., Herrow School.

"The book is just A1, clearly right in conception and admirably executed."—P. A. BARNETT, M.A., H.M. Chief Inspector for the Training of Teachers.

"The most attractive introduction to Letin that has come under my notice, and I have seen most of them in the secondary schools which I inspect."—JOHN KERR, LL.D., late H.M. Chief Inspector of Schools and Training Colleges in Scotland.

"It makes a new departure in the teaching of Letin that ought to be productive of great good. I am in entire sympathy with its method."—A. E. SOOGAL, H.M. Chief Inspector in the West of Scotland.

"*Ora Maritima* proves an ideal book for a first reader."—W. H. D. ROUSE, Litt.D., Head Master of the Perse School, Cambridge.

"I have used *Ora Maritima* in actual teaching, and have found it both interesting and instructive to the pupil."—Professor J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D.

"This is a charming book. We know no better epithet by which to describe such an introduction to the Letin tongue. . . . It is giving a strong recommendation to say, as we gladly do, that our author has given us the ideal book which he formerly described."—Secondary Education.

"We can conceive no more delightful book for the induction of youth into the paths of Latin."—The Monthly Register.

"An interesting experiment, ably carried out."—Journal of Education.

"It aims at teaching a little thoroughly, and it succeeds."—School World.

"An extremely simple and interesting book."—Literary World.

# PRO PATRIA

*Sequel to ORA MARITIMA, with Grammar and Exercises to the end of the Regular Accidence.*

Cloth 8vo, price 2s. 6d. (SUBJECT TO DISCOUNT).

## RECENT OPINIONS.

"I have had both *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* prescribed for use in our earliest standards. They were acknowledged by the Committee which passed them to be unequalled for the interesting way in which they presented the subject. I think no praise is too high for them."—W. G. WEDDERSPON, M.A., H.M. Inspector of European Schools and Training Colleges, Burma.

"Both books have been used here with great advantage to both teachers and taught."—R. HAYDON, M.A., County Secondary School, Helston.

"In a long experience I have found *Pro Patria* quite the best book which I have ever come across for arousing and sustaining the interest of small boys in their elementary stage of Latin translation."—The Rev. PHILIP CRICK, M.A., St. Ronan's, West Worthing.

"Professor Sonnenschein's books do not 'gild the pill.' They merely make the pill a healthy one."—*The Week's Survey*.

# THE GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

*A Greek Story for Beginners on the same lines as the above, with Exercises (covering the Regular Accidence), Vocabularies and Maps.*

By CHARLES D. CHAMBERS, M.A.

Cloth 8vo, price 3s. (SUBJECT TO DISCOUNT).

In this book, as in the Latin volumes of this series, special attention has been devoted to correctness of idiom in the text.

## OPINIONS.

"At once felicitous in design and able in execution, containing incidents of thrilling interest written in the grave Thucydidean style."—*Journal of Education*.

"Most ably planned and most successfully executed. It gives reality and interest to the early study of Greek as distinguished from the study of Greek grammar, furnishing attractive reading and cutting away the mass of grammatical detail not immediately necessary."—*Educational Times*.

"A most valuable school book. The narrative is bright and interesting. We welcome this book and strongly recommend it to all schoolmasters."—*The Oxford Magazine*.

*A German Story for Beginners on the same lines*

# AM RHEIN

By K. WICHMANN, PH.D., Professor of German in the University of Sheffield.

Cloth 8vo, price 2s. (SUBJECT TO DISCOUNT).

**LONDON: SWAN SONNENSCHEIN & CO., Limited.**  
**NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN CO.**







